

## **Two-Page PDF View**

This pdf has been modified from the original pdf so that readers can more easily access and view the two facing pages of each lesson online.

This pdf is designed for online viewing, and each pdf page contains 2 pages from the original pdf. If you would like to print out individual pages, please download the original pdf from the website.

## **College Caesar**

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and  
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

College Caesar  
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2011 by Geoffrey D. Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at [creativecommons.org](http://creativecommons.org).

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9843065-7-2  
ISBN-10: 0-9843065-7-9

Published by Geoffrey Steadman  
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

[geoffreysteadman@gmail.com](mailto:geoffreysteadman@gmail.com)

## Table of Contents

	Pages
35 Lessons by Title.....	v
Preface to the Series.....	vii-viii
Introduction.....	ix-x
Outline of the <i>Bellum Gallicum</i> .....	xi
Chronology of the Life of Julius Caesar.....	xii
How to Use this Commentary.....	xiii
Running Core Vocabulary.....	xiv-xix
Abbreviations.....	xxii
Selections from Caesar's <i>Commentārii dē Bellō Gallicō</i>	
Book I.1-7 (Lessons 1-5) .....	2-11
The Helvetian Campaign .....	
Book IV.24-35 (Lessons 6-12) .....	12-25
First Expedition to Britain .....	
Book VI.13-20 (Lessons 13-17) .....	26-35
Customs Among the Gauls .....	
Book V.24-48 (Lessons 18-35) .....	36-71
Gauls Attack the Romans in Winter-Quarters .....	
Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives.....	72-73
Verb Synopses.....	74-84
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary.....	85-91

## 35 Lessons by Title

### Book 1

- Lesson 1 The Divisions Within Gaul
- Lesson 2 Orgetorix Forms a Conspiracy to Emigrate from Helvetia
- Lesson 3 Orgetorix's Conspiracy Fails
- Lesson 4 The Helvetians Follow Orgetorix's Plan: Two Possible Routes
- Lesson 5 Caesar Decides to Stop the Helvetians

### Book 4

- Lesson 6 The Britons Approach the Romans as They Land
- Lesson 7 The Romans Land and Give Chase to the Britons
- Lesson 8 The Britons Seek Peace, and the Roman Cavalry is Delayed
- Lesson 9 The Fleet is Damaged in the Storm
- Lesson 10 The Britons Attack the Romans (I)
- Lesson 11 The Britons Attack the Romans (II)
- Lesson 12 The Britons are Defeated by the Romans

### Book 6

- Lesson 13 Two Classes of Nobility: Druids and Knights
- Lesson 14 The Druids: Privileges, Education, and Beliefs
- Lesson 15 The Knights and Human Sacrifice
- Lesson 16 Gods and Goddesses Among the Gauls
- Lesson 17 Marriages, Funerals, and Rumors

### Book 5

- Lesson 18 Roman Winter Quarters are Scattered Among the Gauls
- Lesson 19 Tasgetius is Killed and Ambiorix Revolts
- Lesson 20 Ambiorix Advises Sabinus to Leave Camp
- Lesson 21 Sabinus' Officers Advise Against Leaving the Camp
- Lesson 22 Sabinus Argues in Favor of Leaving the Camp
- Lesson 23 Cotta Argues Against Leaving the Camp, but the Romans Depart
- Lesson 24 The Romans are Ambushed, and Sabinus is Despondent
- Lesson 25 Cotta Takes Command as the Romans are Surrounded
- Lesson 26 Cotta is Wounded, and Sabinus Seeks out Ambiorix
- Lesson 27 Ambiorix Kills Sabinus and Incites the Nervii
- Lesson 28 The Nervii and other Gauls Attack Cicero's Camp
- Lesson 29 Cicero Resists as the Nervii Advise Departure
- Lesson 30 The Nervii Continue the Siege and Set Fire to Cicero's Camp
- Lesson 31 Cicero's Men Resist Amid the Flames
- Lesson 32 The Story of Vorenus and Pullo
- Lesson 33 Caesar is Informed and Acts Decisively
- Lesson 34 Caesar Sends Orders to Crassus and Labienus
- Lesson 35 Caesar Sends Word of his Arrival to Cicero

## Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make selections from Julius Caesar's *Gallic War* as accessible as possible to intermediate-level Latin readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading one of the greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Latin. To accomplish this goal, I have decided to eschew the traditional commentary format and adopt the best features of Clyde Pharr's *Aeneid*.

Beneath each of the 35 sections, hereafter called "lessons," of the Latin text are all the corresponding vocabulary words that occur four or fewer times in the commentary, arranged alphabetically in two columns. On the page facing the Latin text and vocabulary is a single page of grammar commentary, which is organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged into two columns. This format allows me to include as much information as possible and yet insure that the entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers. To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core vocabulary list at the beginning of this commentary that includes all words occurring five or more times arranged according to the lesson in which readers first encounter them. An alphabetized form of this list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and historical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. Assuming that readers complete their initial study of Latin with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to almost all subjunctive and accusative-infinitive constructions, identify unusual verb forms and noun constructions, and in general explain aspects of the Latin that they should have encountered in their elementary review of Latin grammar but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.

For instructors, I have intentionally placed the readings in Book VI before those in Book V. This arrangement conveniently breaks the book into halves of 17 and 18 lessons so that those reading in college may complete one lesson per class and have a midterm after L. 17. For those reading in a high school block schedule (90 90-minute classes), the order allows teachers to complete one lesson per day and administer several tests by the end of the 4.5-



week (22-day) interim and to finish all 35 lessons by the 9-week (45 day) interim. Year-long Latin programs can devote two days to each lesson and finish well within a 90-day semester.

### Better Vocabulary-Building Strategies

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are occasions where a dictionary is necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Latin, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process. Many continue to defend this practice, but I am convinced that such work has little pedagogical value for intermediate and advanced students and that the time saved can be better spent reading more Latin, memorizing vocabulary, mastering principal parts, and reading advanced-level commentaries and secondary literature.

As an alternative to dictionary work, I recommend that readers review the running core vocabulary list (5 or more times) as soon as possible. Once they have mastered these words, I encourage them to single out, drill, and memorize the words that occur 3-4 times as they encounter them in the reading and devote comparatively little attention to words that occur once or twice. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional methods.

### Print on Demand Books

This volume is a self-published, print-on-demand (POD) book, and as such it gives its author distinct freedoms not available in traditional publications. Since this book is no more than a pdf file waiting to be printed, I am able to respond very quickly to readers' recommended changes and create an revised edition that is available online or in retail within 24 hours. If you would like to suggest changes or download a free .pdf copy of this commentary, please see one of the addresses below. All criticisms are welcome, and I would be very grateful for your help.

Finally, I would like to thank Christopher Lauber at the Fordham Preparatory School and Jim Westcot at Blue Ridge High School for reading through the text and commentary and saving readers from innumerable errors, both great and small. I am very grateful for their sound judgment and keen observations.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.  
 geoffreysteadman@gmail.com  
 http://www.geoffreysteadman.com

## Introduction to Caesar's *Commentārī dē Bellō Gallicō*

Gaius Julius Caesar was a ruthless killer and consummate writer. He did not come to Gaul to rescue the people from themselves; he came to conquer, and his commentaries on the *Bellum Gallicum* were a vehicle to magnify his reputation among the Roman people. Nowhere are these two traits of Caesar better illustrated than in the passage below from Book I.12. In an effort to stop the 368,000 Helvetians from migrating to Western Gaul, Caesar pursues with three legions and intercepts one-fourth of the Helvetians (up to 92,000) as they are about to cross the Arar river and rejoin those who have already crossed. What ensues is a slaughter:

I.12 Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodānum  
 influit, incredibīlī lenitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn possit. Id  
 Helvetiū rātibus ac lintribus iunctīs transībant. Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certiōr  
 factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvetiōs id flūmen tradūxisse, quārtam vērō  
partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē  
 castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nondum flūmen transierat. 1  
 5

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī  
 sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabātur  
 Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus,  
 cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium consulem interfēcerat et  
 eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium  
 quae pars civitātis Helvetiae īsignem calamitātem populō Romanō intulerat, ea  
 pīnceps poenam persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās  
iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī  
 eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant. 10  
 15

The passage is rich in rhetorical devices which Caesar employs to dehumanize the enemy, downplay the loss of life, and yet magnify his image as a Roman general. First, Caesar does not depict the Helvetians as human beings worthy of sympathy. In lines 4-7 he refers to the enemy with the banal term “partem,” and in line 7, the only line which depicts the attack itself, he employs nondescript pronouns and adjectives such as “eōs,” “eōrum,” and “reliquī” which suggest that Caesar is attacking a faceless enemy rather than an entire community. In line 4, when he refers to the Helvetians as “copiarum,” his word choice is not simply vague but misleading. The word *cōpiae* can refer to “supplies” or “baggage” and rightly describe the long train of Helvetians travelling with their possessions, but throughout Caesar’s writings, the word denotes “troops;” and so, when Caesar uses this word to describe the Helvetians, he perhaps intentionally suggests that he is facing armed men rather than unarmed innocents.

Since in lines 8-9 Caesar refers to the group which he attacks as a *pagus*, one of the four political districts of Helvetia, we can conclude that Caesar in fact attacked men and women of all ages. Thus, when Caesar describes those whom he attacked as “those weighed down and unsuspecting” (*eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs*, l. 7), though the passage may lead us to believe that these are *cōpiae*, troops, hindered by their packs, they are more likely men and women of all ages weighed down not by weapons but by the young, by the sick, and by the elderly.

Besides word choice, another rhetorical strategy that Caesar employs involves the relative size and arrangement of passages in his narrative. Elsewhere, Caesar is very detailed in his descriptions of battles. Here, he devotes only two lines (7-8) to the attack itself, but six (1-6) to an introduction and another nine (8-16) to his justification. In doing so, Caesar not only minimizes the importance of an attack on 92,000 but also stresses the lengthier justification—making his defense rather than the slaughter the most memorable passage in the account.

Not surprisingly, even Caesar’s justification strains credulity. Caesar claims that “in the memory of our fathers” (*patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, 10) the same part of Helvetia that he attacked had killed the consul Cassius and enslaved his soldiers. Caesar’s portrayal makes the consul’s death seem recent and Caesar’s action a timely response, but from other sources we know that Cassius was killed in 107 BC, 50 years before Caesar’s attack. Caesar’s dating appears intentionally vague. Caesar is likewise misleading when he says that his encounter with the district which killed Cassius was “either by chance or by the plan of the immortal gods” (*sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum*, 11): he not so subtly suggests that the gods approve his action and therefore readers should look upon Caesar as both just and favored by the gods.

Caesar’s ploys do not stop there. In addition to referring to himself in the third person, which makes his account seem objective rather than biased, he asserts in lines 14-16 that he is avenging not only a public injustice but a private wrong: the grandfather of Caesar’s father-in-law was killed along with Cassius. Even if the Romans found such a claim on behalf of a distant relative credible, the fact that Caesar did not know he was attacking this particular *pagus* shows that, whatever the outcome, vengeance was not among his primary motives.

As readers, therefore, we should view Caesar’s *Bellum Gallicum* not as a boring rehash of war but, just as the passage above, a lively attempt to depict events in a way that deflects blame and increases Caesar’s reputation among the Romans. Whether Caesar is vilifying the enemy (Book 1, 6) or drawing attention away from his haste and lack of preparation (Book 4, 5), we should be sceptical of Caesar’s account and ever vigilant to distinguish fact from bias.

## Outline of the *Bellum Gallicum*

Scholars debate when Caesar wrote his *Commentaries*. One appealing theory is that he—perhaps with the help of staff—wrote and published each book individually while settled in winter-quarters. Such timing would have allowed Caesar to report his campaigns to the Senate and, more importantly, respond immediately to less favorable or accusatory reports spread by his political enemies.

### **Book 1 (58 BC): Campaign against the Helvetians. Campaign against Ariovistus.**

Caesar departs from the province of Transalpine Gaul, where he is currently governor, to stop the migration of 368,000 Helvetians from Helvetia, modern Switzerland, to western Gaul. Caesar then turns his forces against Ariovistus and the Germans in Eastern Gaul and drives them across the Rhine river, the customary boundary between the Gauls and Germans.

### **Book 2 (57 BC): Campaign against the Belgians.**

The Belgian Gauls amass forces to resist the Romans, and Caesar marches toward them. The Remi, a Belgic tribe, agree to assist Caesar. The fighting that ensues, particularly with the Belgian Nervii, is among the fiercest in the entire Gallic War. The Romans emerge victorious.

### **Book 3 (56 BC): Campaign against the Veneti**

As troops under Servius Galba fend off attacks by Gauls in the Alps, the Veneti, a tribe in northwest Gaul on the coast of the Atlantic, seize and imprison Roman envoys. Caesar’s response is to fight the seafaring Veneti on the Atlantic ocean, capture their fortresses, and execute their leaders for seizing the Roman envoys. In the meantime, the quaestor Marcus Crassus defeats the Aquitani to the south.

### **Book 4 (55 BC): Caesar Bridges the Rhine. First Expedition to Britain**

The Suebi along with other Germanic tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, venture west across the Rhine into Belgian territory to avoid the fierce Germanic Suevi. After negotiations, Caesar repulses the Germans, builds a bridge to span the Rhine within ten days, and after brief skirmishes returns to Gaul. In late August, Caesar makes his initial expedition to Britain.

### **Book 5 (54 BC): Second Expedition to Britain.**

After landing in Britain unopposed, he proceeds inland and fights with Britons under the leadership of Cassivellaunus. After Caesar subdues Cassivellaunus at Kent, he returns to Gaul. On account of low grain supplies, the Romans settle into scattered winter-quarters, which are subsequently attacked by the Gauls. While the forces under the legates Titurius and Cotta are overwhelmed by the leader Ambiorix, those under Cicero and Labienus prevail over the Nervii and Treveri respectively.

### **Book 6 (53 BC): Expedition to Germany. Customs among the Gauls and Germans.**

As Labienus defeats the Treveri, Caesar assists Cicero’s camp and pursues Ambiorix and the Eburones. He briefly crosses the Rhine river to prevent Ambiorix from receiving assistance from the Germans, but Ambiorix continues to elude the Romans. Caesar describes the organization and customs of the Gauls, the religion and warfare among the Germans, and the animals found in the Hercynian forest in Germania.

### **Book 7 (52 BC): The Gauls Rally and Fall under Vercingetorix**

The Gauls rally under the leader Vercingetorix. After several sieges and battles, Caesar besieges Vercingetorix and the main Gaul force at Alesia. When the Gauls eventually surrender, Vercingetorix is led to Rome, where he will eventually be led in chains and executed to celebrate Caesar’s triumph.

**Book 8 (51 BC):** Written by Aulus Hirtius, a legate of Caesar, possibly after Julius Caesar’s death, the book details how Caesar’s quells small uprisings and rewards loyal Romans and Gauls with gifts.

## The Life of Julius Caesar

- B.C.
- 100 Caesar is born on July 12<sup>th</sup>
- 87 Flamen Dialis, selected to priesthood
- 83 Marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna
- 80-78 Serves in the army in Asia Minor
- 76-75 Studies oratory in Rhodes
- 68 Quaestor, elected
- 67 Marries Pompeia
- 65 Aedile, elected
- 63 Pontifex Maximus, elected
- 62 Praetor, elected
- 61 Proprætor, serves in Spain
- 60 Forms First Triumvirate with Pompey, Crassus
- 59 Consul, marries Calpurnia
- 58-49 Proconsul in Gaul
- 56 Triumvirate renewed at Luca
- 50 Openly breaks with Pompey
- 49 Crosses the Rubicon, civil war begins
- 48 Battle of Pharsalia in Greece, defeats Pompey's forces
- 47 Subdues Egypt
- 46 Battle of Thapsus in North Africa, defeats Cato and senators, Dictator for 10 years
- 45 Battle of Munda in Spain, defeats sons of Pompey, Imperator for life
- 44 Assassinated by a conspiracy on March 15<sup>th</sup>
- 
- 43 Grand-nephew Gaius Octavius made heir, renamed Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus  
Second Triumvirate formed by Octavian, Mark Antony, and Lepidus
- 31 Battle of Actium, Octavian defeats Mark Antony and Cleopatra, becomes sole ruler
- 31-AD 14 Octavian receives the cognomen "Augustus," becomes the first Emperor

## How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to help readers identify the most frequent words and encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

**1. Skim through the book and familiarize yourself with every grammar box and the appendix.**

**2. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.**

**A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading.**

Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have already reviewed most of these words in first year Latin and can devote their efforts to mastering the handful of words in the initial lessons that they have never encountered.

**B. Download and use the core list flashcards** available online (ppt or jpg format). Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long-term memory. Flashcards are particularly efficient at promoting repetition. As you work, delete flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

Digital flashcards for less frequent vocabulary (occurring 3-4 times) will appear online in time.

**3. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses**

**A. Persistence counts.** Caesar is very consistent in his use of vocabulary and grammar, and so while the readings will maintain the same level of difficulty, you will become a much better reader with time. The more earnestly you learn vocabulary and new grammar in the early readings, the more fluently you will be able to read later passages without much preparation.

**B. Read in Latin word order.** Initially, readers have a tendency both (i) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (ii) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so forth. Ideally, you should read in Latin word order. Whatever method you use, always review the sentence which you have just translated in Latin word order. Over time, as you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with Caesar increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method of reading. It is a lot of fun, and with persistence it is very satisfying.

**4. Reread a passage or lesson immediately after you have completed it.**

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Caesar's consistent use of vocabulary and grammar makes it possible for readers to develop reading proficiency very quickly. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin and acquiring meaning without using English.

**5. Reread the most recent passage or lesson immediately before you begin a new one.**

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

### Caesar Running Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following list includes all words in the Latin selections that occur five or more times arranged in a running vocabulary list. The number in the left column indicates in which lesson the word first occurs. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesar's words into a single list and counting them. Flashcards (.ppt and .jpg) are available online. For an alphabetized list of the core words, readers should consult the glossary.

1 **ā, ab:** (away) from; by, 80  
 1 **absum, -esse, āfui:** be absent, lack, 6  
 1 **ad:** to, toward; near, at 110  
 1 **alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 13  
 1 **animus, -ī m.:** mind, spirit; *pl.* courage, 6  
 1 **appellō (1):** to call, call by name, 5  
 1 **atque:** and, and also, and even, 60  
 1 **aut:** or (aut...aut – either...or), 32  
 1 **Belgae, -ārum m.:** Belgians, 6  
 1 **bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 16  
 1 **captō, -ere, cēpi, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 11  
 1 **causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 21  
 1 **contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum:** to hold or keep together, 6  
 1 **cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86  
 1 **dē:** (down) from; about, concerning, 41  
 1 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:** to say, speak, tell, call, name, 18  
 1 **et:** and, also, even, 167  
 1 **etiam:** also, even, besides, 8  
 1 **ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
 1 **finis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 17  
 1 **flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 9  
 1 **fortis, -e:** strong, brave, valiant, 7  
 1 **Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 17  
 1 **Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; *subst.* a Gaul, 15  
 1 **Germānus, -a, -um:** German, 9  
 1 **gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus:** to carry (on), wage, 8  
 1 **Helvētius, -a, -um:** Helvetian; *subst.* a Helvetian 16  
 1 **hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 92  
 1 **in:** in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 173  
 1 **initium, -ī n.:** beginning, entrance, 6  
 1 **inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 15  
 1 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 17  
 1 **is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 133  
 1 **longē:** far, at a distant, 6  
 1 **noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 36  
 1 **obtinēō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 6  
 1 **omnis, omne:** every, all, 72  
 1 **pars, partis, f.:** part, share, side 43  
 1 **pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī:** to stretch out, reach, extend to, 7  
 1 **proelium, -ī n.:** battle, combat, 15  
 1 **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus:** keep off, prohibit, 6  
 1 **prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 7

1 **proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, very close, 12  
 1 **-que:** and, 108  
 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?):** who, which, that, 225  
 1 **reliquus, -a, um:** remaining, the rest of, 28  
 1 **Rhēnus, -ī m.:** Rhine River, 9  
 1 **Rhodanus, -a, -um:** Rhone, 5  
 1 **sē:** himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74  
 1 **Sēquanus, -a, -um:** Sequanian, 5  
 1 **sum, esse, fui, futurum:** to be, 165  
 1 **suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their own, 54  
 1 **tertius, -a, -um:** third, 8  
 1 **trēs, tria:** three, 7  
 1 **ūnus, -a, -um:** one, 29  
 1 **virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 11  
 2 **ager, agrī m.:** field, land; farm, 8  
 2 **alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), 12  
 2 **altus, -a, -um:** high, lofty, tall, 5  
 2 **amicitia, -ae, f.:** friendship, 12  
 2 **annus, -ī m.:** year, 11  
 2 **apud:** among, at the house of (acc.), 7  
 2 **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum:** to judge, think, 10  
 2 **autem:** however, moreover, 5  
 2 **civitas civitātis, f.:** state, citizenship, 20  
 2 **confirmō (1):** make strong, confirm strengthen, 5  
 2 **constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus:** decide, establish, resolve, 14  
 2 **copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 12  
 2 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus:** lead, draw; consider, 7  
 2 **ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72  
 2 **facilis, -e:** easy; adv. facile, easily, 10  
 2 **faciō, -ere, fecī, factum:** do, make, perform; grant, 40  
 2 **finitimus, -a, -um:** neighboring; subst. neighbors, 6  
 2 **frumentum, -ī n.:** grain, 10  
 2 **habēō, -ēre, habuī, -itus:** have, hold; consider, 32  
 2 **homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 15  
 2 **imperium, -ī n.:** command, power, 7  
 2 **inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātum:** wage, carry on, 7  
 2 **iter, itineris n.:** way, road, route, journey, 17  
 2 **locus, -ī m.:** place, region, location, 31  
 2 **magnus, -a, -um:** great, large; mighty, important, 29  
 2 **maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, largest, 15  
 2 **mille pl. milia, ium n.:** thousand, 9  
 2 **minor, minus:** less, smaller, 7  
 2 **multitūdo, inis f.:** multitude, population, people, 11  
 2 **numerus, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 13  
 2 **Orgetorix, -is m.:** Orgetorix, 6  
 2 **passus, -ūs:** pace, step, 7  
 2 **pāx, pācis f.:** peace, quiet, rest, 6  
 2 **permovēō, -ēre:** to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5

2 **persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum**: persuade, convince, 12  
 2 **possum, posse, potui**: be able, can, avail, 40  
 2 **praestō, -āre, -stīfī, -stīfūtus**: perform, show, be better, 6  
 2 **prō**: before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16  
 2 **profectio, -ōnis f.**: departure, 5  
 2 **proficīscor, -ī, -fectus**: set out, depart, 23  
 2 **regnum, -ī n.**: royal power, kingdom, realm, 8  
 2 **rēs, reī, f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 64  
 2 **tōtus -a, -um**: whole, entire, 7  
 2 **undique**: (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5  
 2 **ut**: as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59  
 3 **ac**: and, and also, and even, 24  
 3 **accipiō**: to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10  
 3 **arma, -ōrum n.**: arms, equipment, tools, 7  
 3 **cōgō, cōgere, cōgēgī, cōāctum**: to collect; compel, 11  
 3 **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**: to try, 6  
 3 **dīēs, -ēī m./f.**: day, time, season, 33  
 3 **dō, dare, dedī, datum**: give; grant, 18  
 3 **īdem, eadem, idem**: the same, 14  
 3 **exercitus, -ūs m.**: (trained) army, 9  
 3 **filius, -īī m.**: son, 5  
 3 **ille, illa, illud**: that, those, 22  
 3 **incitō (1)**: put into motion, urge on, 5  
 3 **maximē**: exceedingly, especially, 6  
 3 **mors, mortis, f.**: death, 9  
 3 **multus, -a, -um**: much, many, 11  
 3 **nē**: lest, that not, no, not, 13  
 3 **neque**: and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27  
 3 **nōn**: not, by no means, not at all, 36  
 3 **ob**: on account of, because of (acc.), 5  
 3 **ōrātiō, -ionis f.**: speaking, speech, 8  
 3 **per**: through, across (acc) 18  
 3 **populus, -ī m.**: people, nation, 9  
 3 **probō (1)**: approve, commend, 5  
 3 **Rōmānus, -a, -um**: of Rome, Roman, 15  
 3 **spērō (1)**: hope (for), expect, 6  
 3 **tempus, temporis, n.**: time, occasion, 11  
 4 **cōnsilium, -īī n.**: plan, counsel, 12  
 4 **conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus**: come together, assemble, 9  
 4 **duo, duae, duo**: two, 8  
 4 **existimō (1)**: judge, consider, think, 9  
 4 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum**: to order, command, 17  
 4 **nihil**: nothing, 10  
 4 **nūllus, -a, -um**: none, no, no one, 9  
 4 **oppugnō (1)**: capture by assault, attack, 6  
 4 **periculum, -ī n.**: risk, danger, peril, 14  
 4 **post**: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5  
 4 **privō (1)**: deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5

4 **quisque, quidque**: each one, each person, 9  
 4 **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: take back, recover, 10  
 4 **singulus, -a, -um**: one by one, separate, 5  
 4 **spēs, -ēī f.**: hope, expectation, 6  
 4 **trānsēō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus**: pass (by), 6  
 4 **ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum**: use, employ (abl.), 5  
 4 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**: to see, 14  
 5 **adventus, -ūs m.**: arrival, approach, 7  
 5 **Caesar, -aris m.**: Caesar, 40  
 5 **certus, -a, -um**: definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8  
 5 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 6  
 5 **facultās, -tātis f.**: opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5  
 5 **imperō (1)**: command, order, bid, 7  
 5 **lēgātus, -ī m.**: an envoy, legate, 16  
 5 **legio, -ōnis f.**: legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32  
 5 **licet**: impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5  
 5 **mīles, mīlītis, m.**: soldier, 33  
 5 **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus**: send, hurl, dismiss, 20  
 5 **pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**: arrive, 8  
 5 **sī**: if (only), whether, in case that, 30  
 5 **sine**: without (abl.), 8  
 5 **sub**: under, below, beneath, underneath, 5  
 5 **tamen**: however, nevertheless, 14  
 5 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**: to hold, keep, 6  
 5 **ūllus, -a, -um**: any, 5  
 5 **volō, velle, voluī**: will, wish, be willing, 13  
 6 **animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum**: turn mind to, notice 5  
 6 **at**: but; mind you; but, you say, 7  
 6 **barbarus, -a, -um**: foreign, savage, 5  
 6 **cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum**: to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14  
 6 **co(n)iciō, -ere, -iēcī**: throw together, throw, take oneself, 10  
 6 **cōnsuescō, -ere, cōnsuē(v)ī, -suētum**: to be accustomed, 8  
 6 **ēgredior, -ī, -gressus**: go out, disembark, 5  
 6 **equitātus, -ūs m.**: cavalry, 5  
 6 **genus, generis, n.**: origin, kind, sort, 10  
 6 **gravis, -e**: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9  
 6 **hostis, -is m./f.**: stranger, enemy, foe, 43  
 6 **longus -a, -um**: long, 8  
 6 **magnitūdo, -inis f.**: greatness, size, 5  
 6 **manus, manūs, f.**: hand; group, 9  
 6 **nam**: for, 9  
 6 **nāvis, nāvis, f.**: ship, boat, 23  
 6 **nisi**: if not, unless 6  
 6 **paulus, -a, -um**: little, small, 9  
 6 **pēs, pedis m.**: foot, 5  
 6 **plērumque**: for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5  
 6 **propter**: on account of, because of, 5  
 6 **pugna, -ae f.**: battle, fight, 7

6 **pugnō** (1): to fight, 9  
 6 **subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum**: follow after or behind, 7  
 6 **summus, -a, -um**: top of, highest (part of) 10  
 6 **telum, -ī n.**: projective, weapon, blow, 9  
 6 **ūsus, -ūs m.**: use, practice, application, 10  
 7 **aliquī, -qua, -quod**: some, any, definite, 8  
 7 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum**: to begin, 9  
 7 **compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum**: fill up, fill, 6  
 7 **conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus**: see, behold, 5  
 7 **dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum**: be lacking, lack, fail, 6  
 7 **eques, equitis m.**: horseman, rider, 12  
 7 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**: carry, bear, endure, 7  
 7 **impetus, -ūs m.**: attack, assault, onset, 7  
 7 **ordō, -inis m.**: order, line, array; status, 6  
 7 **perturbō** (1): confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6  
 7 **primus -a -um**: first, 15  
 7 **pūblicus, -a, -um**: public, common, 11  
 7 **signum -ī, n.**: sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5  
 7 **subsidiū, ī n.**: reserve troops; third line of battle, 5  
 7 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so large, 10  
 7 **tum**: then, at that time, 12  
 7 **uterque, utraque, utrumque**: each (of two) 8  
 8 **Britannia, -ae f.**: Britain, 6  
 8 **castra, -ōrum n.**: camp, encampment, 23  
 8 **dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**: report, offer 8  
 8 **dēmonstrō** (1): to show, demonstrate, 5  
 8 **nox, noctis, f.**: night, 9  
 8 **obsēs, obsidis m./f.**: hostage, 5  
 8 **petō, petere, petivī, petitum**: seek, aim at, 7  
 8 **sed: but, moreover**, however, 13  
 8 **sēsē**: emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14  
 8 **subitō**: suddenly, 5  
 8 **superō** (1): surpass, overcome, 6  
 8 **superus, -a, -um**: upper, higher, above, 9  
 8 **veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus**: come, go, 14  
 9 **accidō, -ere, accidī**: to happen, fall to, 13  
 9 **complūres n.**: several, 5  
 9 **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**: to go away, depart, 9  
 9 **efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**: make, form, 5  
 9 **impedimentum, -ī n.**: baggage, impediment, 6  
 9 **ita**: so, thus, 7  
 9 **itaque**: and so, 6  
 10 **casus, -ūs m.**: misfortune, mishap; fall 5  
 10 **consuetūdo, -inis f.**: custom, habit, 5  
 10 **etsī**: even if, although, though, 5  
 10 **intermittō, -ere**: interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5  
 10 **maior, maius**: greater, 6  
 11 **cohors, cohortis f.**: cohort, company, troop 14

11 **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**: kill, slay, destroy, 14  
 11 **interim**: meanwhile, in the meantime, 5  
 11 **premō, -ere, pressī, pressus**: check, pursue, control, 7  
 11 **sustineō, -ēre, -uī**: hold up, sustain, 8  
 12 **celeritās, -tātis f.**: quickness, swiftness, speed, 5  
 12 **celeriter**: quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6  
 12 **circiter**: (round) about, not far from, 7  
 12 **nuntius, -ī m.**: messenger, 6  
 12 **quantus, -a, -um**: how great, much, many, 6  
 13 **contrōversia, -ae f.**: dispute, debate, 7  
 13 **disciplina, -ae f.**: training, instruction, 5  
 13 **Druidēs, -um m.**: Druids, 6  
 13 **praemium, -ī n.**: reward, prize, 5  
 14 **ibi**: there, in that place, 5  
 14 **littera, -ae f.**: letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12  
 14 **ratio, ratiōnis, f.**: calculation, account, method, 5  
 15 **circumveniō, -ire**: to come around, encircle, 6  
 15 **vīta, -ae, f.**: life, 5  
 16 **ponō, ponere, posuī, positum**: to put, place, 6  
 17 **concilium, -iī n.**: meeting, rendezvous, 6  
 18 **Ambiorix, -rigis m.**: Ambiorix, 15  
 18 **Cicero, Cicerōnis m.**: Cicero 14  
 18 **Cotta, -ae m.**: Cotta, 10  
 18 **Crassus, -ī m.**: Crassus, 5  
 18 **Eburōnēs, -um m.**: Eburones (German), 5  
 18 **hiberna, -ōrum n.**: winter-quarters, 26  
 18 **Labiēnus, ī m.**: Labienus, 5  
 18 **Lucius, -ī m.**: Lucius, 10  
 18 **Nervū, -iōrum m.**: Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9  
 18 **Quintus, -ī m.**: Quintus, 6  
 18 **Sabinus, ī m.**: Sabinus, 7  
 18 **Titurius, -ī m.**: Titurius, 8  
 19 **ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus**: ascend, mount 2  
 19 **oppugnātiō, -tiōnis f.**: an assault, 6  
 19 **resistō, -ere, -stīti**: stand still, halt; oppose, 5  
 19 **vallum, -ī n.**: wall, fortification, palisade, 11  
 20 **Aduātucī, -ōrum m.**: Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5  
 20 **commūnis, -e**: common, 6  
 21 **salūs, -ūtis f.**: safety, refuge; health, 10  
 21 **tūtus, -a, -um**: safe, secure, guarded, 7  
 22 **calamitās, -tātis f.**: loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5  
 22 **quidem**: indeed, in fact, certainly, 6  
 22 **victoria, -ae f.**: victory, 7  
 23 **relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum**: to leave behind, 7  
 25 **accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus**: approach, 5  
 28 **mūnitio, -iōnis f.**: fortification, paving, 7  
 28 **turris, turris f.**: tower, walled tower, 7  
 32 **Pullo, Pullōnis, m.**: Pullo, 6 and **Vorēnus, -ī m.**: Vorenus, 5



## Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	m.	masculine
acc.	accusative	n.	neuter
act.	active	nom.	nominative
adj.	adjective	obj.	object
adv.	adverb	PPP	Perfect passive participle
app.	appositive	ppl.	participle
comp.	comparative	pass	passive
dat.	dative	pf.	perfect
dep.	deponent	pl.	plural
d.o.	direct object	plpf.	pluperfect
f.	feminine	pred.	predicate
fut.	future	prep.	preposition
gen.	genitive	pres.	present
imp.	imperative	pron.	pronoun
impf.	imperfect	reflex.	reflexive
impers.	impersonal	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative	seq.	sequence
i.o.	indirect object	sg.	singular
inf.	infinitive	subj.	subject or subjunctive
inter.	interrogative	superl.	superlative
l.	line	voc.	vocative
ll.	lines		

## Citations in Caesar

The universal method for referring to pages in any edition of Caesar's *Commentarii dē Bellō Gallicō* is through a sequence of two or even three numbers: e.g. IV.24.2 or 4.24. The first number denotes the book in *dē Bellō Gallicō*; the second number, the paragraph; and the third number, if it is included, a subsection about the length of one sentence. Throughout this commentary I have chosen to use Roman numerals to indicate the book number (eg. IV), but it is not uncommon for scholars to use Arabic numerals (e.g. 4). The paragraph number is always an Arabic numeral and is uniform from one edition of Caesar to the next (e.g. IV.24, 4.24). In this book I place the paragraph number in boldface at the beginning of each paragraph. This system allows readers to pick up any edition of Caesar in English or Latin and, regardless of the page numbering of that edition, locate a particular passage in Caesar.

Each paragraph in *dē Bellō Gallicō* can also be divided into subsections, which may be included or left out of citations (e.g. 4.24.1 or simply 4.24). In this commentary I have chosen for pedagogical reasons to include the numbers of these subsections within the text itself. In a classroom setting, teachers can conveniently ask individual students to recite and translate by subsection and not have to refer awkwardly to the initial words in each sentence.

**Line numbers**, located in the inside margin of the text, are peculiar to this commentary. I have included them so that I can efficiently refer to words and phrases in the grammar and readers can easily locate those words and phrases. While you can refer to the line numbers in class discussions, use only the book, paragraph, and subsection numbers when you cite Caesar in written work.

I'm going to spare the defeated, I'm going to speak to the crowd.  
I'm going to spare the defeated, 'cause I'm going to speak to the crowd.  
I'm going to teach peace to the conquered, I'm going to tame the proud.

- Bob Dylan

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

1.1 Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, 1  
 aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.  
 2. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, legibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs  
 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.  
 3. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque 5  
 hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs  
 saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent  
 important, 4. proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,  
 quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvetiī quoque reliquōs  
 Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs 10  
 contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus  
 bellum gerunt.  
 5. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā  
 flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum,  
 attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum, vergit ad 15  
 septentrionēs. 6. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad  
 inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentrionem et orientem  
 sōlem. 7. Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrenaeōs montēs et eam partem  
 Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsū sōlis et 20  
 septentrionēs.

**Aquitānī, -ōrum m.:** Aquitani, 2  
**Aquitania, -ae f.:** Aquitania, 1  
**attingō, -ere, tīgī, tāctum:** touch to, border, 1  
**Celtae, -ārum m.:** Celts, 1  
**commeō (1):** to travel, go to and fro, 1  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten, 4  
**continenter:** continuously, incessantly, 1  
**cotīdiānus, -a, -um:** daily, of every day, 3  
**cultus, -ūs m.:** culture, refinement, 2  
**differō, -ferre,:** differ, carry different ways, 2  
**dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -visus:** divide, distribute, 4  
**effēminō (1):** soften, make into women, 1  
**extrēmus, -a, -um:** farthest, outermost, 2  
**Garumna, -ae f.:** Garumna river, 4  
**Hispānia, -ae f.:** Spain, 2  
**hūmānitās, -tātis f.:** humanity, nature, 1  
**importō (1):** bring in, introduce, import, 1  
**incolō, -ere, -uī:** inhabit, dwell on, 3  
**inferus, -a, -um:** below, lower, 3  
**īnstitūm, ī n.:** institution, practice, custom, 2

**lēx, -lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 3  
**lingua, ae f.:** tongue, language, 2  
**Mātrōna, -ae f.:** Matrona (Marne) river, 1  
**mercātor, -ōris m.:** merchant, trader, 1  
**minimē:** least of all, least, 1  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 4  
**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 2  
**Ōceanus, ī m.:** Oceanus, 3  
**orior, -īrī, ortus:** arise, rise, spring, 3  
**praecedō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** surpass, 1  
**proptereā:** on this account, therefore, 4  
**Pyrenaeus, -a, -um:** of the Pyrenees, 1  
**quoque:** also, 2  
**saepe:** often, 3  
**septentrionēs, -um m.:** north, (7 stars), 3  
**Sēquana, -ae f.:** Sequana (Seine) River, 1  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 3  
**spectō (1):** watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3  
**trans;** over, across (+ acc.), 3  
**vergō, -ere, versī:** turn, bend, 1

- 1 **est...dīvīsa:** *is divided*; dīvīsa is a predicate adjective and not part of a perfect pass. verb  
**quārum ūnam...aliam...tertiam:** *of which (parts) one (part)...another (part)...a third (part)*; a genitive at the beginning of the clause is often, as here, a partitive gen. (gen. of whole)  
 2 **Aquitānī:** *Aquitanians (inhabit)*; add incolunt which is missing through ellipsis (omission)  
**Tertiam (incolunt) quī...:** *(those) who.... (inhabit) the third*; the missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject of missing incolunt  
**ipsōrum linguā:** *in the language of (these) very ones*; i.e. of the Gauls, ipse usually modifies a noun, which is missing and must be supplied; linguā is an ablative of respect (in respect to...)  
**nostrā:** *in our (language)*; supply linguā  
**Celtae...Gallī:** nom. predicates of appellatur  
 3 **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus:** *in...in...in...;* “in respect to...,” all three are abl. of respect  
 4 **Garumna flūmen (dīvidit):** subject, add verb  
**Matrona et Sēquana:** nom. pl. with a 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. verb because the rivers form a single boundary; supply Gallōs as acc. direct object  
 5 **Hōrum omnium:** *of all these*; or “among all these,” partitive gen., as in line 1, Caesar often uses a a genitive at the beginning of a clause and then specifies the parts within the clause  
**proptereā quod:** *because*; lit. “on this account because,” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)  
 6 **Prōvincia:** *of the Province*; i.e. Gallia Transalpina, the area in southern France controlled by the Romans. Although the word prōvincia is a general term, the Romans referred to this province as “the Province”. This edition uses the capital “P” to distinguish it from other provinces.  
 6 **longissimē:** *very far*; superlative adverb longē  
**ad eōs to those...;** eōs is demonstrative  
 7 **ea quae those things which...;** neut. pl.
- ad effēminandōs...:** *for softening...;* lit. “for courage going to be softened” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple) often expresses purpose; when translating, readers should employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate the gerundive as a gerund (e.g. softening) and the noun modified by the gerundive as an object of the gerund  
 8 **Germānīs:** dat. with special adj. proximī  
 9 **quibuscum:** cum quibus  
**Quā dē causā:** *for which reason*; “concerning which reason” quā modifies causā; as often, Caesar places the adjective, here a relative adj., before the preposition  
 10 **virtūte:** *in (respect to) valor*; abl. respect  
**quod:** *because*  
**cum...prohibent...gerunt:** *when...;* cum + indicative, not a preposition with suīs finibus.  
 11 **suīs finibus:** *from their borders*; abl. of separation (a construction which includes but is not limited to place from which), governed by prohibent. “(Helvetians) keep”  
**suīs:** *their*; Helvetians’, reflexive possessive  
**eōs:** *them*; i.e. Germans, personal pronoun  
**ipsī:** *(they) themselves*; Helvetians  
 12 **eōrum:** *their*; i.e. Germans  
 13 **eōrum:** *of these (three parts)*; partitive gen.  
**obtinēre:** ind. discourse (that clause), Gallōs is acc. subj. and quam is acc. d.o.  
**dictum est:** *it has been said*; as in line 2 above  
 14 **continētur:** governs all three abl. of means, which are missing conjunctions, asyndeton  
 15 **ab Sēquanīs...:** *from (the side of)...*  
 16 **oriuntur:** *rise*; pres. deponent, orior  
 17 **spectant in septentrionem:** *looks to the northern...;* i.e. opens up to the northeast  
**orientem:** *eastern*; “rising” sun; pres. pple.  
 18 **eam partem:** *that part*; demonstrative  
 19 **ad Hispāniam:** *near Hispania*; with est  
**spectat:** *looks to...;* i.e. opens up to...

### Gerund-Gerundive Flip

A gerundive (effeminandus,-a,-um, line 7) is a future passive participle. It is a verbal adjective which agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Because it is awkward to translate (e.g. going to be softened), readers should often employ a “gerund-gerundive flip” and translate the gerundive as a gerund, a verbal noun (e.g. softening), and the noun modified by the gerundive as the gerund’s object. Ad + gerund + object is in fact uncommon in Latin but it is an easy way to translate ad + noun + gerundive into suitable English. This is a popular construction in Caesar. So, be prepared.

#### Flip

Ad animōs effēminandōs

*for courage (going) to be softened*



ad effēminandum animōs

*for softening courage*



2.1 Apud Helvētīōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. 1  
Messālā, et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, regnī cupiditāte inductus conīurātiōnem  
nōbilitātis fēcit et civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiīs  
exīrent: 2. perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae  
imperīō potīrī. 5

3. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī natūrā Helvetiū  
continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēno lātissimō atque altissimō, quī  
agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō,  
quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētīōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodānō,  
quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiīs dividit. 4. Hīs rēbus fīebat ut et minus  
lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent; 5. Quā ex  
parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 6. Prō multitūdine  
autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre  
arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinē mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinē  
CLXXX patēbant. 15

3.1 Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōfī cōstituērunt ea  
quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum  
quam maximum numerum coemere, sementēs quam maximās facere, ut in  
itinere cōpia frumentī suppetet, cum proximīs civitatibus pācem et  
amīcitiā cōfirmāre. 2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse 20  
dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

**addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead to, 4  
**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** affect, afflict, 3  
**angustus, -a, -um:** narrow, confined, 4  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.:** influence, clout, 3  
**bellō (l):** to wage war, fight, 1  
**biennium, -ī n.:** a period of two years, 1  
**carrus, -ī m.:** wagon for, baggage, wagon, 2  
**coemō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum:** buy up, 1  
**comparō (l):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**conīurātiō, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**cōsul, -is m.:** consul, 3  
**cupiditās, -tātis f.:** desire, eagerness for, 1  
**cupidus, -a, -um:** desirous, eager, keen, 2  
**dīs, dītis adj.:** rich, wealthy, 2  
**dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus:** divide, distribute, 4  
**dolor, -ōris m.:** pain, grief, anger, passion, 2  
**exeō, -ire, -ī (ivī), -itus:** go out, 4  
**fīō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 3  
**fortitūdō, -dinis f.:** strength, courage, 1  
**glōria, -ae, f.:** glory, fame, 2  
**indūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead in, 1  
**iumentum, -ī n.:** beast of burden, 1

**Iūra, -ae f.:** Iura (a mountain range), 3  
**lacus, -ūs m.:** lake, pond, pool, 2  
**latē:** widely, far and wide, 2  
**lātitudō, -dinis f.:** breadth, width, 1  
**latus, -a, -um:** wide, 1  
**Lemannus, -ī m.:** (w/ Iacus) Lake Geneva, 1  
**lēx, -lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 3  
**longitūdō, -inis f.:** length, width, 2  
**M.:** Marcus, 3  
**Messālā, -ae f.:** Messala, 1  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 4  
**natūra, -ae f.:** nature, 3  
**nōbilis, -e:** noble, renowned, 3  
**nōbilitās, -tātis f.:** nobility, renown, 1  
**patēō, -ēre, -uī:** lie open, extend, 1  
**perfacilis, -e:** very easy; *adv.* very easily 2  
**Pisō, Pisōnis m.:** Piso, 2  
**potior, -īrī, -itus:** gain, win (*abl.*), 2  
**satis:** enough, sufficient, 2  
**sementis, -is f.:** sowing, planting, 1  
**suppetō, -ere, ivī, itum:** suffice, be at hand 2  
**vagor, -ārī:** wander, roam, go to and fro, 1

1 **nōbilissimus, dītissimus:** superlative adjs.  
**fuit:** pf. sum, esse  
**M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus:** when  
*Marcus Messala and Marcus (Pupius) Piso*  
*were consuls;* “with Messala and Piso (being)  
consuls” *abl. abs. i.e. 61 BC,* Romans named  
the year after their annually elected consuls;  
since there is no pple. for sum, esse, the subject  
and predicate are the *abl. abs.*  
2 **regnī:** for the kingship; objective gen. governed  
by cupiditāte, equivalent to “he desires kingship  
3 **persuāsit ut...:** persuaded (dative) *that...*; this  
common verb in Caesar governs an indirect  
command (ut + impf. subj. in secondary seq.)  
4 **exīrent:** *they come out;* impf. subjunctive, *exeō,*  
*exīre* in an ind. command, which can often be  
translated as an inf.: “persuaded...to come out”  
**perfacile esse...:** (*and*) *that it is very easy...*;  
ind. discourse also governed by persuāsit  
above; *asyndeton,* supply a conjunction between  
the ind. command above and *perfacile esse*  
**cum...praestārent:** *since they excelled* ; causal  
with impf. subjunctive governing *abl. respect*  
**tōtius:** gen. sg. (-ius) modifying Galliae  
5 **potīrī:** to possess; dep. inf. *potior* governs an  
ablative object  
6 **id...persuāsit:** *he persuaded them (to do) this*  
**hōc...quod:** *by this (reason)...because;* *abl.*  
*of cause*  
**facilius:** comparative adv. *facilis, facile*  
7 **ūnā ex parte:** *on one side;* “from one part”  
**flūmine Rhēnō:** *abl. means;* supply the verb  
“continentur,” an example of ellipsis  
8 **agrum Helvētium:** *Helvetian land*  
**alterā ex parte:** *on another side;* see line 7  
**monte Iūrā:** *by Iura range;* add “continentur”  
9 **tertiā (ex parte):** parallel with line 7 and 8  
**lacū Lemannō:** *abl. means,* add “continentur”  
10 **hīs rēbus:** *because of...;* *abl. of cause*  
**fīebat ut:** *it happened that...;* *fiō* governs ut  
+ impf. subjunctive (noun result clause); the  
subjunctives are impf. in secondary sequence  
because the main verb is impf.  
11 **vagārentur, possent:** impf. subj. *vagor* and  
*possum;* in result clauses these are translated

as normal impf. indicatives; *vagor* is deponent  
**minus:** comparative adverb; minor, minus  
11 **facile:** *easily;* irreg. adverb from *facilis, facile*  
**finitimīs:** *on neighbors;* dat. of compound  
verb (the infinitive *inferre*)  
**quā ex parte:** *for which reason;* “from which  
respect”  
12 **bellandī:** *of waging war;* gerund, gen. sg. with  
the adj. *cupidī* which in turn modifies *hominēs*  
**Prō...prō:** *because of...;* “in proportion to” or  
“according to,” *prō* is causal in force  
13 **sē habēre:** *that they had;* ind. discourse in  
secondary sequence: *angustōs finēs* is acc. d.o.  
14 **mīlia passuum:** *miles;* “thousands of paces,” a  
mile is 1000 steps; subject of *patēbant*  
16 **adductī...permōfī:** *Helvetians influenced...  
and moved;* the participles are nom. pl.  
agreeing with a missing subject  
**ea quae:** *those (things) which;* *ea* is object of  
*comparāre* and is translated as a demonstrative  
17 **ea quae...pertinērent:** *those (things) which  
pertain/would pertain;* a relative clause of  
characteristic clarifies what sort of thing the  
antecedent is (i.e. *ea*) and can be translated  
here with or without modal “would”  
**ad proficiēscendum:** *for setting out;* gerund  
(verbal noun) + ad expresses purpose  
**comparāre, coemere, facere, confirmāre:**  
complementary infinitives with *constituērunt,*  
supply the missing conjunction “et”  
18 **quam maximum:** *as great...as possible;* *quam*  
+ superlative is frequently translated “as X as  
possible,” here it modifies *numerum*  
**quam maximās:** see above, with *sementēs*  
**ut...suppetet:** *so that...might suffice;* ut +  
impf. subj., purpose clause in secondary seq.  
**ad...conficiendās:** *for accomplishing...;* “for  
those things going to be accomplished” ad +  
gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying *rēs*) often  
expresses purpose; when translating, employ a  
gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund  
and *eās rēs* as the object of the gerund  
**biennium...esse:** *that...;* ind. discourse  
**sibi:** *for themselves;* dat. of interest/advantage  
21 **in...annum:** *into the...;* i.e. “during,” 58 BC

#### Translating Subjunctives

With the exception of purpose clauses (*may, might*), conditional sentences (*if should, would; if were, would; if had, would have*), and some relative clauses of characteristic (*would*), almost all the subjunctive constructions that readers will encounter do not require a special translation in English. Readers should simply identify the tense and translate the subjunctive as one would an indicative. Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives are the most common tenses in secondary sequence.

3.3 Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātīōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitātē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; 4. itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, fratrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitātē obtinēbat ac maximē plebī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet eīque filiam suam in matrimōnium dat. 5. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: 6. nōn esse dūbium quin tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvetīi possent; sē suīs copiīs suōque exercitū illīs regna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. 7. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iusiūrandum dant et regnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse sperant.

4.1 Ea rēs est Helvetiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgē ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur.

2. Diē cōstitūtā causae dictionis Orgetorīx ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaeratōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. 3. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armis iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; 4. neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvetiī arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

**addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead to, 4  
**amicus, -a, -um:** friendly, 1  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Casticus, -ī m.:** Casticus, 1  
**Catamantaloedis, -is m.:** Catamantaloedis, 1  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**conciliō (1):** win over, unite, 1  
**condūcō, -ere:** bring together, gather, 2  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**consciscō, -ire:** to resolve, decree; bring on oneself, 1  
**cremō (1):** burn, consumed by fire, 2  
**damnō (1):** condemn, punish, convict, 1  
**decem:** ten, 1  
**dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, elect, select, 2  
**dictio, -ōnis m.:** pleading, saying; speech, 1  
**Diviciacus, -ī m.:** Diviciacus, 1  
**dubius, -a, -um:** doubtful, wavering, 1  
**Dumnorix, -igis m.:** Dumnorix, 1  
**ēnūtiō (1):** announce, speak out, divulge, 1  
**ēripīō, -ere, -uī, reptus:** rescue, take from, 4  
**exsequor, sequi, secūtum:** follow/carry out 1

**factū:** to do (supine), 2  
**familia, -ae f.:** family, household, 1  
**fidēs, eī f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**filia, -iae f.:** daughter, 1  
**firmus, -a, -um:** strong, steadfast, 1  
**frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 2  
**Haeduus, -a, -um:** Haeduan, Aeduan, 1  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 4  
**indiciū, -ī n.:** information, evidence, 1  
**item:** also, likewise, in like manner, 3  
**iudiciū, -ī n.:** decision, judgment; trial 3  
**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 2  
**ius-iūrandum, iūrisiūrāndī n.:** sworn oath, 2  
**lēgātio, -ōnis f.:** embassy, envoy, 2  
**magistratus, -ūs m.:** magistrate, officer, 3  
**mātrimōnium, -ī n.:** wedlock, marriage, 1  
**moriōr, morī, mortuus sum:** die, 2  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 4  
**obaerātus, -a, -um:** indebted, 1  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 4  
**oportet:** it is proper, fitting, necessary, 2

**pater, patris, m.:** father, 4  
**perfacilis, -e:** very easy; *adv.* very easily 2  
**perficiō, -ere:** complete, accomplish, 3  
**plebs, plebis, f.:** common people, masses, 2  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 4  
**poena, poenae, f.:** punishment, penalty, 3  
**potēns, -entis:** powerful, ruling (*gen.*), 2  
**potior, -iri, -itus:** gain, win (*abl.*), 2

**principātus, -ūs m.:** leadership, rule, 2  
**propterea:** on this account, therefore, 4  
**quin:** (but) that, who (not), 2  
**senātus, -ūs m.:** senate, council of elders, 1  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, 4  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum:** undertake, receive, 1  
**suspicio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4  
**vinculum, -ī n.:** bond, chain, 2

1 **ad...conficiendās:** *for accomplishing...*; “for those things going to be accomplished” ad + gerundive (fut. pass. pple modifying rēs) often expresses purpose; when translating, employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as a gerund and eās rēs as the object of the gerund  
**sibi:** *for himself*; dat. of interest/advantage  
2 **eō:** *this*; demonstrative pronoun  
**persuādet Casticō...ut:** *persuades Casticus... that*; verb governs dat. and ind. command  
3 **cuius:** *whose*; gen. sg. relative pronoun  
**multōs annōs:** *for...*; acc. of duration  
4 **appellātus erat:** *had been named*; + predicate nominative; the verb behaves as a linking verb  
**ut...occupāret:** *that he occupy*; ind. command with persuādet can often, but not always, be translated as an infinitive: “to occupy...”  
5 **quod...habuerit:** *which...had...*; pf. subj., relative clause of characteristic  
**Dumnorīgī Haeduō:** (*he persuades*) *Dumnorix the Aeduan*; dat. i.o. of missing persuādet in a construction parallel to Casticō above  
6 **eō tempore:** *at...*; abl. of time when  
**maximē...acceptus erat:** *had been especially (well) received*; governs a dative of agent (by...)  
7 **ut...cōnārētur:** *that...*; ind. command governed by persuādet; impf. deponent cōnōr **idem:** *the same thing*; id-dem, neuter acc. d.o., referring to ut...occupāret in ll. 4-5 above  
**eī:** *to him*; dat. sg. indirect object with dat  
8 **perfacile...esse...perficere:** *that it is very easy to...*; ind. disc. governed by probat; perficere is inf. subject and perfacile is the pred. adj.  
**factū:** *to do*; “in doing” abl. sg. supine (PPP stem + ū), an abl. of respect limiting perfacile  
**illīs:** *for those (men)*; dat. interest  
**conāta:** *the things attempted*; PPP, neuter pl.  
9 **propterea quod:** *because*; lit. “on this account because” which is a pleonasm (redundancy)  
**ipse:** (*he*) *himself*; i.e. Orgetorix  
**obtentūrus esset:** *would attain*; “was going to attain,” fut. pple + sum (here impf. subj.) is a periphrastic fut.; verbs in subordinate clauses in

ind. disc. are placed in the subjunctive mood  
**nōn esse dūbium:** *that he did not doubt*  
10 **quin...plūrimum possent:** *that...they would have very much power*; a common idiom; quin + subj. following a verb of doubt or hindering  
11 **conciliātūrum (esse):** *that they will win over*; fut. infinitive; ind. disc., sē is acc. subj.  
12 **ius-iurandum:** *a sworn oath*; as one or two words; both decline; gerundive iurō, -āre  
13 **tōtīus:** *of the entire*; gen. sg. with Galliae  
**sēsē:** *that they*; acc. subject of posse  
**potīrī:** *to possess*; dep. inf., regnō as abl. obj.  
14 **Ea rēs:** *this matter*; i.e. Orgetorix's conspiracy  
**est...ēnūtiāta:** *ēnūtiāta est*; pf. passive  
**per indicium:** i.e. through spies and informers  
**mōribus suīs:** *according to their customs*; “from their customs,” often with “ex” denotes a source of action (separation) not abl. cause  
15 **causam dīcere:** *to plead the case*; idiom  
**damnātum...sequī:** *that (he) if condemned follow...*; deponent inf., PPP is conditional  
**oportēbat:** *it was necessary that*; impersonal  
**ut...cremārētur:** *that...*; ind. command  
**ignī:** ablative of means; i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. noun  
**diē cōstitūtā:** *on the...*; abl. of time when  
**causae dictionis:** *for the pleading of the case*  
**ad...milia decem:** *around*; ad means “up to” or “nearly” throughout this passage  
18 **coēgit:** *gathered*; cōgō (co-agō) means (a) compel or (b) drive together; cf. ll. 15 and 22  
19 **eōdem:** *in the same (place)*; abl. place where  
20 **nē...dīceret:** *so that...not*; neg. purpose. cf. 15  
**cum...cōnārētur...cōgerent:** *after...*; cum clause with two impf. subjunctives  
**exsequor:** pres. dep. infinitive, exsequor  
**ob eam rem:** *on account of this matter*  
22 **mortuus est:** *died*; pf. deponent, morior  
**neque abest suspiciō:** i.e. “there is a suspicion that...” litotes; equiv. to “there is no doubt...”  
**ut...as:** common meaning with indicative  
23 **quin sibi...consciverit:** *that he brought...on himself*; quin + pf. subj. consciscō, after a verb of doubting or hindering; cf. line 9 above

5.1 Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīī id quod cōstituerant facere 1  
cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exeant. 2. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse  
arbitrāfī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad  
quadrīngentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; 3. frūmentum omne,  
praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditōnis spē 5  
sublātā parātōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mensum molita  
cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et  
Latobrigīs finitimīs utī, eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs ūnā  
cum eīs proficīscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum  
Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi 10  
adsciscunt.

6.1 Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum  
per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen  
Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus  
impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; 2. alterum per provinciam 15  
nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs  
Helvētiorum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācāfī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque  
nōnnullis locīs vadō trānsītur.

3. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiorum finibus  
Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel 20  
persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,  
existimābant vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus  
rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī  
omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō  
cōnsulibus. 25

a(d)sciscō, -ere, -scīvī: receive, admit, adopt, 1  
aedificium, -ī n.: building, edifice, 2  
Allobrogēs, -um: Allobroges, 3  
angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4  
April, Aprilis m.: April, 2  
Boii, -ōrum m.: Boians (Bohemia) 1  
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind(ly), useful 2  
carrus, -ī m.: wagon for baggage, wagon, 2  
cibāria, -ōrum n.: rations, rationed food, 1  
comburō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn up, 1  
comparō (1): prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
cōsul, -is m.: consul, 3  
d.: diem; day, 1  
difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 1  
domus, -ūs f.: house, home, dwelling, 3  
duodecim: twelve, 1  
efferō, -ferre, -tulī, ēlātus: raise, lift up 4

eō, ire, ivī: to go, come, 4  
exeō, -ire, -ī (ivī), -itus: go out, 4  
expeditus, -a, -um: unimpeded, fast, 4  
extrēmus, -a, -um: farthest, outermost, 2  
extūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn up, 1  
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus: flow, 1  
Gabinius, -ī m.: Gabinius, 1  
Genava, -ae f.: Geneva, 3  
iam: now, already, soon, 4  
impendō, -ere: hang over, threaten, 1  
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 2  
incolō, -ere, -utī: inhabit, dwell on, 3  
Iūra, -ae f.: Iura (a mountain range), 3  
Kal.: Kalends, 1  
L.: Lucius, 2  
Latobrigī, -ōrum m.: Latobrigians (Latovici) 1  
mensis, -is m.: month, 2

molō, -ere, moluī, molitum: grind (in a mill), mill, 1  
mons, montīs m.: mountain, mount, 4  
nondum: not yet, 3  
nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, not none, 2  
Noreia, -ae f.: Noreia, 1  
Noricum, -ī m.: Noricum (modern Austria) 1  
nūper: recently, lately, newly, 1  
omnino: altogether, wholly, entirely, 2  
oppidum, -ī n.: town, 4  
pācō (1): make peaceful, pacify, 1  
parō (1): prepare, make ready, 3  
patiōr, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 2  
perpaucī, -ae, -a: very few, 1  
Pīsō, Pīsōnis m.: Piso, 2  
pons, pontīs m.: a bridge, 2  
portō (1): carry, bear, bring, 2  
praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 2

propterea: on this account, therefore, 4  
quadrīngenti: four hundred, 2  
Raurācī, -ōrum: Rauraci, 1  
reditō, -ōnis f.: return, going back, 1  
rīpa, -ae f.: bank, shore, 1  
socius, -ī m.: comrade, ally, companion, 2  
subeō, -ire, -ī, -itum: approach, undergo, 1  
tollo, -ere, sustulī, sublātum: destroy, raise, 2  
trans: over, across (+ acc.), 3  
Tulingī, -ōrum m.: Tulingi, 1  
ubi: where, when, 4  
vadum, -ī n.: shallow, shoal, ford, 2  
vel: or, vel...vel. either...or, 2  
vicus, -ī m.: village, neighborhood, district, 2  
vis, vis, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4  
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2

1 eius: his; i.e. Orgetorix, gen. sg.  
nihilō minus: no less; "less by nothing," comp.  
adverb; nihilō is abl. degree of difference  
id quod: that which; id is object of facere  
2 ut...exeant: (namely) that...; pres. subj. exeō,  
in a noun purpose clause in apposition to id  
ad eam rem: for this matter; expresses purpose  
sē: that they; acc. subject of parātōs esse  
3 arbitrāfī sunt: pf. deponent  
numerō: in number; abl. of respect  
ad: around; "up to" or "nearly"  
5 praeter quod: except (that) which...  
sēcum: cum sē  
portātūrī erant: were going to carry;  
periphrastic fut. (fut. act. pple + impf. sum)  
ut...essent: so that...; result, impf. sum  
spē sublātā: with hope having been carried off;  
abl. absolute, pf. pass. pple from tollō  
6 ad...subeunda: for approaching...; "for all  
dangers going to be approached," a gerundive  
subeō + ad expresses purpose and is best  
translated through a gerund-gerundive flip as a  
gerund + object: "for approaching all dangers"  
molita: ground; i.e. flour, PPP "set in motion"  
8 utī...proficīscantur: that...; an alternative  
spelling for ut (note: the pres. inf. for itor is utī  
with an initial long-u); introducing an ind.  
command with pres. subj.  
ūsī: having employed; nom. pl. PPP, deponent  
ūtōr governs an ablative object  
ūnā: altogether; adverb formed from an abl.  
10 trānsierant: pluperfect of trānsēō  
sociōs: (as) allies; in apposition to Boiōsque  
12 erant: there were

itinerā: routes  
quibus...possent: by which...; rel. clause of  
characteristic; impf. subj. of possum, quibus is  
a relative adj. with itineribus, which is  
redundant and may be left untranslated  
domō: from home; place from which  
ūnum: one (route); in apposition to itinera  
14 quā: by which (way); or "where," abl. as adv.  
quā...dūcerentur: by which...; relative of  
characteristic with impf. subjunctive, the path  
is so narrow that carts must pass one at a time  
15 ut...possent: so that; result clause, impf. subj.  
facile: easily; irregular 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adv. facilis, -e  
alterum (iter): the other (route); in apposition  
to itinera (line 12) and parallel to "ūnum"  
16 multō: much; lit. "by much", abl. degree of  
difference modifies comparative adjectives  
facilius atque expeditius: comparative adjs.,  
neuter singular modifying "alterum (iter)"  
propterea quod: because; 3<sup>rd</sup> instance so far  
18 vadō: in the shallows; "in a ford"; place where  
20 sēsē...persuāsūrōs (esse)...coactūrōs (esse):  
that they would persuade or compel; fut. inf.  
21 bonō animō: seemed not yet of good will to...;  
abl. of quality in the predicative position  
22 vt: irregular ablative of means, vis  
paterentur: they (Allobrogēs) allow; impf.  
subj. of the deponent patiōr (3<sup>rd</sup>-io)  
23 diem dīcunt quā diē: they name the day on  
which (day)...; ablative time when  
24 a(nte) d(iem) V. Kal(ends) Apr(ilis): 5th day  
before the Kalends of April; March 28<sup>th</sup>, 58  
L. Pīsōne...cōnsulibus: abl. abs; add "being"

7.1 Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere 1  
cōnārī, mātūrāt ab urbe proficiscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in  
Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. 2. Prōvinciae tōtī  
quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā  
ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī. 5

3. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīū certiorēs factī sunt, legātōs ad eum mittunt  
nobilissimōs civitatīs, cuius legātīōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem  
locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per  
prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius  
voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium 10  
consulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētīis pulsū et sub iugum  
missū, cōncēdendum nōn putābat; 4. neque hōminēs inimicō animō, datā  
facultāte per provinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et  
maleficiō existimābat. 5. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs 15  
quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātīs respondit diem se ad dēliberandum  
sūmptūrū: sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

**April, Aprilis m.:** April, 2  
**Cassius, -ī m.:** Cassius, 1  
**concēdō, -ere:** go away, withdraw, yield, 2  
**cōsul, -is m.:** consul, 3  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus:** strive; hasten, 4  
**dēliberō (1):** consider, consult, weigh, 1  
**Genava, -ae f.:** Geneva, 3  
**impetrō (1):** to obtain, accomplish, 3  
**inimicus, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 4  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4  
**intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** come or go  
between, intervene, 1  
**Idūs, -uum f.:** Ides (day of the month), 1  
**iugum, -ī n.:** yoke, (mountain) range, 2  
**L.:** Lucius, 2  
**lēgatio, -ōnis f.:** embassy, envoy, 2  
**maleficium, -īī n.:** wrongdoing, crime, 2  
**matūrō (1):** hasten; anticipate, ripen, 1  
**memoria, -ae f.:** memory, 4  
**Nammeius, -īī m.:** Nammeius, 1  
**nobilis, -e:** noble, renowned, 3

**nuntiō (1):** announce, report, 2  
**occidō, -ere, occidī, occisus:** kill, cut down 4  
**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 2  
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus:** drive, push, 2  
**pons, pontis m.:** a bridge, 2  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**propterea:** on this account, therefore, 4  
**putō (1):** to think, imagine, 3  
**rescindō, -ere, scidī, scissum:** cut back, 1  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsum:** to answer, 3  
**revertor, -ī, reversus sum:** to turn back, return, 2  
**rogō (1):** to ask; tell, 2  
**spatium, -īī n.:** space, room, extent, 4  
**sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum:** take, spend, 1  
**temperō (1):** refrain from, keep from, 1  
**ubi:** where, when, 4  
**ulterior, -ius:** farther, 2  
**urbs, urbis, f.:** city, 1  
**Verucloetius, īī m.:** Verucloetius, 1  
**voluntās, -tātis f.:** will, wish, choice, 2

#### Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

In indirect discourse, the verbs of subordinate clauses become subjunctive, while the main verbs become infinitives. These subjunctives often do not require a special translation. Simply translate the verb in the appropriate tense and identify the subjunctive as “subordinate clause in indirect discourse.”

quod imperium obtentūrus esset	<i>because he was about to obtain the command</i>	p. 6
quod...aliud iter habērent nūllum	<i>because they had no other route</i>	p. 10

- 1 **Caesarī:** *to Caesar;* Caesar talks about himself in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person; dat. sg. of nūntiātum esset  
**nūntiātum esset:** plpf. pass. subjunctive in a temporal clause with cum, “after” or “when”  
**id...eōs...cōnārī:** *this...(namely) that they attempt;* acc. subject and deponent inf. (indirect disc.) in apposition to id  
2 **quam...itineribus:** *in as rapid marches as possible;* “with the greatest marches as it is possible,” quam + superlative is “as X as possible,” potest is impersonal: “it is possible”  
3 **Gallia ulteriōrem:** *further Gaul;* i.e. the Province (Transalpine Gaul) in southern France  
**contendit:** *hastens*  
4 **Prōvinciae tōtī...imperat:** *ordered from the entire Province...;* dat. indirect object; tōtī is dat. sg. of tōtus (gen. tōtūs)  
**quam...numerum:** *as great a number of soldiers possible;* “a greatest number of soldiers as it is able;” see line 2  
4 **imperat...(et) pontem...iubet:** supply the missing conjunction “et,” *asyndeton*, which suggests that Caesar is quick and decisive  
5 **ad Genavam:** *near Geneva*  
**rescindī:** present passive infinitive  
6 **eius:** *his;* i.e. Caesar’s  
**certiorēs facti sunt:** *were informed;* “were made more certain”, common idiom in Caesar, certiorēs is a pred. nominative  
7 **cuius legātīōnis:** *of which embassy;* rel. adj.  
8 **quī dicerent:** *who would say...;* relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. dīcō, which one may translate as a regular purpose clause: “to say...”  
**sibi esse in animō:** *that they had in mind;* + inf. “there is to them in mind,” dat. of possession  
9 **propterea quod:** *because;* lit. “on this account because,” 4<sup>th</sup> and final instance of this phrase  
**habērent:** *they had;* impf. subj., subordinate clauses within indirect discourse govern verbs in the subjunctive  
**rogāre ut...liceat:** *they asked that it be allowed...;* historical inf. and ind. command  
**eius voluntāte:** *with his permission*  
10 **memoriā tenēbat:** *in memory;* abl. of means, a common idiom for “he recalled” or “he remembered”  
**L. Cassium...occisum (esse), exercitumque...pulsū (esse)...missū (esse):** two

separate instances of indirect discourses (two acc. subjects) governed by tenēbat, supply esse to form pf. passive infinitives  
11 **occisum (esse):** *had been killed;* pf. pass. inf.  
**pulsū (esse):** pf. pass. inf. pellō  
**sub iugum missū (esse):** *had been sent under the yoke;* i.e. had been enslaved  
12 **cōncēdendum nōn (esse sibi):** *that he must not yield;* “that it is not going to be yielded by him,” a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of sum) which expresses obligation or necessity, often with a dative of agent  
**hominēs...temperātūrōs (esse):** *that people...would not refrain;* fut. inf. governed by existimābat  
**inimicō animō:** *of hostile intent;* abl. of description modifying hominēs  
**datā facultāte:** ablative absolute  
13 **itineris faciendī:** *of making a journey;* “of a journey going to be made” gerundive modifies gen. iter which is better translated through a gerundive-gerund flip  
**ab iniūriā, maleficiō:** *from...;* abl. separation with temperātūrōs (esse)  
14 **ut spatium...posset:** *so that...;* purpose clause with impf. subj.; spatium is subject  
15 **sē...sūmptūrū (esse):** *that he...;* indirect discourse, supply esse for the future inf.  
**ad dēliberandum:** *for deliberating;* ad + gerund expressing purpose, which can also be translated as an infinitive: “to deliberate”  
16 **quid;** *anything;* aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone; what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquid becomes just quid)  
**sī...vellent...reverterentur:** *if they should wish, they could return...;* in direct disc. a future less vivid condition (sī pres. subj., pres. subj.) which are placed in impf. subjunctive in indirect discourse in secondary sequence  
**ad Id(ūs) April(is):** *near the Ides of April;* the 13<sup>th</sup> of April, the Ides denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon; Idūs is 4<sup>th</sup> decl. acc. pl. and Aprilis is gen. sg.

#### Numbers of Helvetians Killed During Caesar’s Campaign

In I.29 Caesar claims that 368,000 Helvetians and allies left Helvetia (only 92,000 were able to bear arms) and 110,000 returned. Therefore, 258,000 either fled or perished at Caesar’s hand.



24.1 At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et 1  
 ēssedariīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī consuērunt, reliquīs copiīs  
 subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. 2. Erat ob hās causās summa  
 difficultās, quod navēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn  
 poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī 5  
 onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus desiliendum et in fluctibus  
 consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, 3. cum illī aut ex ārīdō aut  
 paulum in aquam progressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs,  
 audacter tēla coicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. 4. Quibus rēbus nostrī  
 perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī, nōn eādem alacritāte 10  
 ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs consuerant utēbantur.

25.1 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat  
 barbarīs inūsitiātor et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removērī ab  
 onerariīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī atque 15  
 inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs propellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs  
 magnō usū nostrīs fuit. 2. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et  
 inūsitiātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī constitērunt ac paulum modo  
 pedem rettulērunt.

**alacritās, -tātis f.:** eagerness, ardor, 1  
**aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3  
**aqua, -ae f.:** water, 1  
**aridus, -a, -um:** dry, 3  
**audacter:** boldly, 1  
**consistō, -ere, -stifī:** to stand (still), stop 2  
**dēsiliō, -ire, -luī:** to jump down, dismount, 4  
**difficultās, -tātis f.:** trouble, difficulty, 1  
**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 4  
**ēssedariūs, -ī m.:** charioteer, driver, 1  
**expeditus, -a, -um:** unimpeded, fast, 4  
**figurā, -ae f.:** form, shape, figure, 1  
**fluctus, -ūs m.:** wave, billow, 2  
**funda, ae f.:** sling, 3  
**ignōtus, -a, -um:** unknown; obscure 1  
**imperītus, a, um:** unskilled, inexperienced, 2  
**impeditus, -a, -um:** hindered, impeded, 3  
**inde:** from there, then, afterward, 3  
**insuefactus, -a, -um:** accustomed, inured, 1  
**inūsitiātus, -a, -um:** unusual, uncommon, 1  
**latus, -eris n.:** side, flank, 3  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 1  
**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 4  
**mōtus, -ūs m.:** motion, 3

**nōtus, -a, -um:** known, familiar, famous, 2  
**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 2  
**onerariūs, -a, -um:** freight (ship); 2  
**onus, oneris n.:** burden, load, freight, 1  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** burden,  
 overwhelm, 3  
**pedester, -tris, -tre:** on foot, infantry, 1  
**perterreō, -ēre, -terruī:** terrify thoroughly, 1  
**praemittō, -ere:** send forward, send ahead, 2  
**prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus:** step forward,  
 go forth, advance, 2  
**prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsus:** drive forward  
 or push away, 3  
**referō, ferre, tulī, lātum:** report, bring back, 3  
**removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus:** remove, 2  
**remus, ī m.:** oar, 2  
**sagitta, -ae f.:** arrow, 1  
**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4  
**speciēs, -ēi f.:** sight, appearance, aspect, 1  
**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3  
**submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī:** move up; remove, 1  
**tormentum, -ī n.:** missile-launcher, 3  
**ubi:** where, when, 4

- 1 **cōnsiliō...cognitō:** abl. absolute  
**praemissō...ēssedariīs:** abl. absolute with two  
 nouns; mobile troops were sent in advance  
 2 **quō...genere:** which kind (of warfare); abl. obj.  
 of ūtī, the deponent complementary inf. of ūtor  
 3 **cōnsu(ev)ērunt:** were accustomed; 3p pf.  
**reliquīs copiīs subsecūtī:** having followed  
 behind with the rest of the troops; dep. pf. pple  
 modifies barbarī, the cavalry went in advance  
 and the foot-soldiers followed  
 3 **nāvibus:** from...; abl. of place from which  
**ēgredi:** from disembarking; “to step out,” dep.  
 inf. ēgredior  
 4 **nisi in altō:** except in the deep; the Roman  
 ships did not have flattened keels to come  
 closer to the shore  
**cōstituī:** to be stopped; pass. inf. with poterant  
 5 **mīlitibus...oppressis:** the soldiers having been  
 overcome...; dat. of agent of pass. periphrastic,  
 the dat. of agent is better translated as a subject  
 intervening words are ablative of cause/means  
**gravī:** i-stem abl. sing. modifies onere  
 6 **et desiliendum (erat)...et consistendum  
 (erat)...et pugnandum (erat):** (both) the  
 soldiers had to...and had to...and had to...; “it  
 was going to be jumped down by soldiers...”  
 passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) with a  
 dat. of agent expressing obligation or necessity;  
 it is better translated in the active with the verb  
 “must” or, as here, “had to” (see pg. 21)  
 7 **cum...coicerent...incitārent:** when...;  
 temporal cum-clause with impf. subjunctive  
 8 **paulum:** a little; inner acc. or acc. of extent  
**prōgressī:** having advanced; pf. pple deponent  
**omnibus...expeditīs:** abl. absolute  
**nōtissimīs locīs:** abl. absolute, supply “being”  
 9 **insuēfactōs:** experienced; ‘accustomed’  
**quibus rēbus:** by these matters; “by which  
 things,” abl. means or cause; Caesar often uses  
 relative pronoun for transition where English  
 employs a demonstrative  
**nostrī:** our (men); as often  
 10 **huius generis pugnae:** gen. governed by the  
 adjective imperītī, “unskilled in”  
**eādem...studiō:** abl. objects of utēbantur  
 11 **quō...consuerant:** which...; quō is an abl.  
 object of the inf. ūtī  
**proeliīs:** in battles  
 12 **quod:** this; “which,” acc. obj. of animadvertit  
**nāvēs longās...constituī:** acc. subj. and pass.  
 infinitives governed by iussit below  
 13 **barbarīs:** to the barbarians; dat. of reference  
**inūsitiātor:** nom. sg. comparative adj.  
 14 **paulum:** a little; inner acc. or acc. of extent  
**removērī:** pres. pass. inf.  
**cōstituī:** to be stopped; pass. inf.  
 15 **propellī, submovērī:** pass. infinitives, hostēs  
 is acc. subject  
 16 **magnō usū nostrīs fuit:** served a great use  
 to our men; “was for a great use for our men,”  
 double dative construction (ūsū is dat. of  
 purpose, nostrīs is dat. of interest)  
 17 **paulum modo:** just a little; modo is adverbial,  
 paulum is acc. of extent  
 18 **pedem:** their step(s); i.e. they retreated  
**rettulērunt:** 3<sup>rd</sup> pl. pf. referō

#### Background to Caesar’s First Invasion of Britain on August 26, 55 BC

In IV.20 Caesar says that, although the winters were early (*matūrae*) in the north, he decided to go to Britain because he realized that assistance had been supplied from there (*inde subministrāta auxilia*) for the Gauls in almost every battle. Since Caesar knew very little about the region—its size (*magnitūdō*), inhabitants (*quantae nātīōnēs*), its practices in war (*ūsus bellī*), or its suitable ports (*idōnēi portūs*)—he sent Gaius Volusenus in IV.21 as a scout to gather this information.

In the meantime, several states (*civitatēs*) of the Britons learned about his plan, sought out Caesar, and offered hostages as a show of loyalty. Caesar sent Commius, a loyal Gaul whom Caesar had placed as leader of the Atrebatēs and who had clout (*auctoritās*) over Gauls, back with the Britons. On the fifth day, Volusenus returned and reported what he had seen. In IV.22 after accepting hostages from the Gauls, Caesar placed the legates Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta in charge of Roman forces in Gaul. Then he departed with 2 legions and about 80 transport ships.

In IV.23 Caesar set sail after midnight (*tertiā ferē vigiliā*) and around 10 a.m. (*hōrā diēi quārtā*) arrived in Britain. The Romans found themselves facing the sheer cliffs of Dover, and on top of all of the hills armed troops (*copiās armātās*) openly stood. Caesar now informed his legates about what Volusenus reported and sailed 7 miles up the coast to an open beach (*apertō ac plānō litore*).

25.3 Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem 1  
maris, quī X legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī  
feliciter eveniret, ‘Dēsilitē,’ inquit, ‘militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus  
prōdere; ego certē meum rēi publicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.’  
4. Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiecit atque in hostēs aquilam 5  
ferre coepit. 5. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus  
admitterētur, universī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. 6. Hōs item ex proximīs primī  
nāvibus cum conspēxissent, subsecutī hostibus appropinquāverunt.

26.1 Pugnatū est ab utrīsq̄e ācritē. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs 10  
servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius  
aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere  
perturbābantur; 2. hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs  
singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs  
adoriebantur, 3. plūrēs paucōs circumstībant, alī ab latere apertō in  
universōs tēla conciebant. 15

4. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item  
speculātōria navigia militibus complērī iussit et, quōs laborantēs conspēxerat,  
hīs subsidia submittēbat. 5. Nostrī, simul in āridō constitērunt, suīs omnibus  
consecutīs, in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fūgam dedērunt; neque  
longius prosequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere 20  
non potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristīnam fortūnam Caesarī defuit.

**ācritē:** sharply, fiercely, 2  
**admittō, -ere, misī, missum:** admit, allow, 2  
**adorior, -irī, -ortus sum:** rise up, attack, 2  
**aggrogō (1):** to crowd together, collect, 1  
**altitudō, -inis f.:** height, depth, altitude, 2  
**aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3  
**appropinquō (1):** approach, draw near, 3  
**aquila, -ae f.:** eagle, eagle standard, 4  
**aridus, -a, -um:** dry, 3  
**circumsistō, -ere, -stetī:** to surround, 2  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** urge on, incite 3  
**consequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow after; pursue 1  
**conspiciō, -ere, spexī, spectus:** see, behold 5  
**contestor, -ārī, -ātum:** to call to witness, 1  
**cunctor, -ārī, -ātum:** to delay, hesitate 1  
**cursor, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 3  
**dēdecus, -oris n.:** dishonor, disgrace, shame, 1  
**dēsiliō, -ire, -luī:** to jump down, dismount, 4  
**deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 4  
**ego:** I, 2  
**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 4  
**eveniō, -ire, -ī, -itum:** come or turn out, 1  
**fēliciter:** happily, favorably, 1  
**firmiter:** firmly, steadfastly, 1

**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4  
**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 3  
**impeditus, -a, -um:** hindered, impeded, 3  
**imperātor, -oris m.:** commander, leader, 2  
**inquam:** say, 4  
**insistō, -ere, -stetī:** set on, set about; stop, 2  
**insula, -ae, f.:** island, 2  
**item:** also, likewise, in like manner, 3  
**labōrō (1):** work, toil, labor, strive, 2  
**latus, -eris n.:** side, flank, 2  
**litus, litoris n.:** coast, shore, beach, 1  
**magnopere:** greatly, very much, 2  
**mare, -is n.:** sea, 1  
**meus, -a, -um:** my, mine, 1  
**navigium, -ī n.:** vessel, sail, 1  
**nōtus, -a, -um:** known, familiar, famous, 2  
**occurrō, -ere:** run to meet, attack, 2  
**officiū, -ī, n.:** duty, obligation, 3  
**pauci, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 4  
**plūs (plūris):** more, 4  
**pristinus, -a, -um:** former, previous, earlier 2  
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditum:** bring forth; betray 2  
**proiciō, -icere, -ieci, -iectum:** throw  
forward, project, 2

**prosequor, sequī, secūtum:** follow, pursue 1  
**quicumque, quae-, quod-:** whosoever, 4  
**scapha, -ae f.:** skiff, small boat, 1  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 2  
**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4  
**singulāris, -e:** single, 2  
**speculātōrius, -a, um:** of a look-out/scout, 1

**submittō, -ere, -misī:** send up, 1  
**ubi:** where, when, 4  
**ūniversus, -a, -um:** all together, whole, 3  
**vadum, -ī n.:** shallow, shoal, ford, 2  
**vērō:** in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice; utterance, word, 4

1 **nostrīs...cunctantibus:** abl. abs., pres. pple  
2 **quī...ferēbat:** (*the one*) who...; i.e. the  
standard bearer, subject of inquit  
**contestātus...ut:** having implored the gods...  
that...; ut + impf. subjunctive in ind. command  
3 **dēsilitē:** plural imperative  
**militēs:** vocative direct address  
**vultis:** 2<sup>nd</sup> pl. pres. volō  
**aquilam:** *the eagle (standard);* the golden eagle  
on the staff that represents the 10<sup>th</sup> legion. The  
behavior toward the military standard is similar  
to the loyalty shown to the American flag.  
4 **meum...officiū praestiterō:** *I will have*  
*performed my duty to;* + dat. compound, fut. pf.  
5 **cum...dīxisset:** *when he had...;* cum is an  
adverbial conjunction not a preposition  
**vōce magnā:** *with...;* abl. of manner is often  
without “cum” when the object is modified by  
an adjective, here magnā  
**sē:** *himself;* standard-bearer is the subject  
**ex nāvī:** ablative, i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> declension  
6 **ferre:** infinitive ferō  
**nostrī:** *our (men);* nom. subject  
**conhortātī:** pf. dep. pple cohortor  
**inter sē:** *one another;* “among themselves”  
**nē...admitterētur:** *that...not;* negative ind.  
command, impf. subj. in secondary sequence  
7 **Hōs...conspēxissent:** *when (the other soldiers)*  
*had caught sight of (them);* plpf. subjunctive  
8 **subsecutī:** *having followed behind;* pf dep pple  
**pugnatū est:** *each (side) fought;* “it was  
fought,” impersonal pf. pass.  
9 **Nostrī:** *our (men)*  
10 **ordinēs servāre:** *to maintain their ranks*  
**subsequi:** *to follow behind;* deponent inf.  
**alius aliā ex nāvī:** *one from one ship...*

*another from another ship;* common meaning  
with two uses of alius, -a, -um  
11 **quibuscumque signīs:** dat. of compound verb  
12 **vērō:** *but indeed, but to be sure;* vērō is in an  
adversative clause; placed second in the  
sentence but first in English, it draws out a  
contrast between the Romans and the Britons  
**nōtis...vadīs:** ablative abs.  
13 **ēgredientēs:** pres. act. pple  
14 **plūrēs paucōs:** *More (Britons)...few*  
*(Romans);* juxtaposition, which heightens the  
contrast; plūrēs is nom. subj. of plūs  
**alī:** (*and*) others...; asyndeton  
16 **quod:** *this;* “which;” acc. obj. animadvertisset  
**nāvium:** i-stem gen. plural nāvis  
17 **complērī:** pass. infinitive  
**quōs laborantēs conspēxerat:** *whom he had*  
*seen struggling;* “toiling,” against the enemy  
18 **hīs:** *to these;* dat. i.o. or dat. with compound  
**Nostrī:** *Our (men)*  
19 **suīs omnibus:** *all their (fellow soldiers)...;* an  
abl. absolute with consecutīs  
**in:** *against;* a common meaning in this context  
**in fūgam dedērunt:** *put them into flight;* “in  
fūgam dō” is a common idiom in Caesar  
20 **longius:** *farther;* comparative adverb, longē  
**prosequi:** pres. deponent complementary inf.  
21 **insulam capere:** *to land on the island;* “catch  
the island,” the horses had not disembarked  
yet because the ships were not close enough to  
the shore  
**ad pristīnam fortūnam:** (*compared*) *to his*  
*previous good fortune;* “in proportion to...”  
suggests a comparison  
22 **Caesarī defuit:** *failed Caesar;* “was lacking to  
Caesar,” dat. of interest

#### Supine

A supine is a verbal noun formed by adding **-ū** in ablative and **-um** in accusative to the 4<sup>th</sup> principle part stem. It is often translated as an ablative of respect (specification) and accusative expressing purpose:

factū: <i>in doing (to do)</i> (p. 6, 20)	frūmentātum: <i>to get grain</i> (p. 20)	oppugnātum: <i>to assault</i> (p. 39)
	rogātum: <i>to ask</i> (p. 52)	nocitum: <i>to be harmed</i> (p. 52)

27.1 Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad 1  
Caesarem lēgātōs dē pace mīserunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt sēsē  
factūrōs pollicītī sunt. 2. Ūnā cum hīs legātīs Commius Atrēbās vēnit, quem  
suprā demonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. 3. Hunc illī ē  
nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs orātōris mōdō Caesaris mandāta deferret, 5  
comprehenderat atque in vincula coiēcērant; 4. tum proeliō factō  
remīsērunt. In petendā pace eius rēi culpam in multītūdinem coiēcērunt  
et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

5. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pacem ab  
sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere <sē> imprudentiae dixit 10  
obsidēsque imperāvīt; 6. quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex  
longinquiōribus locīs accessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. 7. Intereā  
suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē  
civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28.1 Hīs rēbus pāce confirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britāniam 15  
ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā demonstrātratum est, quae equitēs  
sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. 2. Quae cum  
appropinquārent Britānniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō  
coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant  
profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est prōpius 20  
sōlis occāsū, magnō suī cum periculō deicerentur; 3. quae tamen, ancorīs  
iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum  
provectae continentem petiērunt.

adversus, -a, -um: opposite, in front, 2  
ancora, -ae f.: anchor, 3  
appropinquō (1): approach, draw near (dat.), 3  
arcessō, -ere, -ivī, itum: summon, send for, 1  
Atrebas, Atrēbātis, m.: Atrebatēs, 3  
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9  
commendō (1): to commit, entrust, 1  
Commius, -i m.: Commius, 2  
compleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6  
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4  
continēns, continētis f.: the continent, mainland, 3  
coōrior, -irī, coōrtus: arise, break out, 2  
culpa, -ae f.: blame, fault; cause, 1  
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 3  
dēciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: to throw, 4  
fluctus, -ūs m.: wave, billow, 2  
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 3  
iactō, iacere, iēcī, iactum: to throw, 4  
ignoscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum: pardon, forgive 2  
imprudētia, -ae, f.: lack of foresight, 2  
inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3

insula, -ae, f.: island, 2  
intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 3  
lenis, -e: smooth, slippery, 1  
longinquus, -a, -um: far, distant, remote, 2  
mandō (1): order, command, commit, 2  
modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 4  
necessārius, -a, -um: necessary, inevitable, 1  
occāsus, -ūs m.: fall, destruction, 2  
orātōr, -oris, m.: speaker, pleader, 1  
pauci, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4  
polliceor, -cērī, -citus: promise, offer, 2  
portus, -ūs m.: harbor, port, haven, 1  
praemittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2  
princeps, -cipis m./f.: chief, leader, 4  
proprius: more closely, nearer, 3  
prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, vectum: carry forth, 1  
quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 2  
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 1  
referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report, bring back, 3  
remigrō (1): to travel back, wander back, 1  
remittō, -ere, -misi: send back, let go, relax, 4

simul: at the same time (as); together, 4  
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3  
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum: loosen, set sail; pay, 1  
statim: immediately, at once, 4  
sufferō, -ere, sustulī: carry or hold up, bear 3  
suprā: above, over, on the top, 3

tempestās, tempestātis f.: storm, 3  
ultrō: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3  
unde: whence, from which source, 3  
ventus, ventī m.: wind, 3  
vinculum, -i n.: bond, chain, 2

1 proeliō: in battle; abl of respect or place where  
simul atque: as soon as...  
sē...recēpērunt: they recovered; "retreated"  
2 dē: about  
obsidēs: acc. d.o. of datūrōs (esse)  
sēsē: that they would; reflexive as acc. subject  
of fut. infinitives datūrōs (esse) and factūrōs  
(esse) in secondary sequence  
quaeque imperāssēt: and (the things) which he  
had ordered; imperā(vi)ssēt is a syncopated  
plpf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic,  
the missing antecedent is obj. of factūrōs (esse)  
pollicītī sunt: perfect deponent polliceor  
ūnā: altogether, together; ablative as adverb  
3 quem: whom...; acc. subject of pf. passive inf.  
praemissum (esse) in ind. discourse with  
by demonstrāveram  
4 suprā demonstrāveram: I had shown above;  
i.e. earlier in the narrative  
illī: those (Britons); subject of comprehenderat  
5 orātōris mōdō: in the manner of a public  
speaker; ablative of manner  
6 mandāta: the orders; "things ordered" acc. d.o.  
deferret: Commius carried; impf. subj. deferō  
coiēcērant: plpf. co(n)iciō, -ere  
proeliō factō: abl. absolute  
7 in petendā pace: in seeking peace; "in peace  
going to be sought," gerund-gerundive flip in  
which pace becomes acc. obj. of the gerund  
eius rēi: for this matter; gen. of charge  
coiēcērant: pf. co(n)iciō, -ere  
8 ut ignōscerētur: impf. subj., ind. command  
9 questus quod: having complained that...had  
waged; intulisset is plpf. subj. for alleged cause  
cum: after  
in continentem: to the continent; i.e. continent  
of Europe, governed by missīs  
petissent: they had sought; plpf. subjunctive  
ab sē: from him; i.e. from Caesar, reflexive  
8 intulissent: plpf. subj. inferō, alleged cause  
10 ignōscere <sē>: that he pardons; + dat. obj.  
11 quōrum...partem...partem: part of  
which...(another) part...; partitive gen.  
12 arcessitam: summoned; modifies partem

paucīs diēbus: within...; abl. time within  
sēsē: that they...; emphatic reflexive, acc.  
subject of fut. inf. datūrōs (esse) in indirect  
discourse  
13 suōs: their own (men); object of iussērunt  
in agrōs: to their fields, to their farms  
15 Hīs rēbus: abl. of means of cause  
Pāce confirmātā: abl. absolute  
post diēm quartum quam...ventum during  
the fourth day after they came to Britain;  
"the fourth day later than it was come  
into Britain," postquam as one word can be  
translated "after;" ventum est is an impersonal  
pf. passive which we translate in the active  
nāvēs XVIII: subject of solvērunt  
16 suprā demonstrātratum est: it has been  
revealed above; i.e. earlier in the narrative  
quae...sustulerant: which had brought...;  
modifies fem. pl. nāvēs, plpf. sufferō  
17 ex superiōre portū: from the upper harbor  
lēnī: abl. sg. i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj. with ventō,  
the wind was not strong, so the ships holding  
the cavalry arrived later than the ships that  
had already come ashore  
solvērunt: set sail; "loosened"  
quae cum: when these (ships)...; "when  
which (ships)," we prefer a demonstrative here  
where Caesar uses a relative pronoun  
Britānniae: to Britain; dat. of compound verb  
19 coōrta est: deponent perfect, coōrior  
ut...posset: that...was able; result clause  
nūlla eārum: the antecedents of the adj. and  
pronoun are the nāvēs (feminine, plural)  
aliae...aliae: some (ships)...others  
eōdem: to the same place; adverb  
erant profectae: plpf. deponent proficiscor  
20 proprius: nearer to + acc.  
21 magnō suī periculō: with great risk for them  
quae tamen: these (ships) however; "which"  
22 cum...complerētur: when...; cum is adverbial  
not a preposition; flūctibus is abl. means  
necessariō: necessarily; abl. as adverb  
adversā nocte: in the face of the coming night  
24 provectae: PPP prōvehō

29.1 Eādem nocte accidit ut esset luna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs 1  
maximōs in Ōceanō efficere consuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. 2. Ita  
ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum  
curāverat, quāsque in aridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās,  
quae ad ancorās erant deligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostrīs 5  
facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

3. Complūribus nāvibus fractīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs  
reliquīsque armamentīs amissīs ad navigandum inūtīlēs, magna, id quod  
necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātio facta est. 4. Neque enim  
nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant quae ad 10  
reficiendās nāvēs erant usuī, et, quod omnibus constābat hiemārī in Galliā  
oportere, frumentum in hīs lōcīs in hiemem provīsum nōn erat.

30.1 Quibus rēbus cognītīs, principēs Britānniae, quī post proelium ad  
Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocutī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et  
frumentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex 15  
castrōrum exiguitāte cognōserent, quae hōc erant etiā angustiora quod sine  
impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat.

**afflictō (1):** agitate, knock about, 1  
**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**aestus, -ūs f.:** tide, swell; heat, 2  
**āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** lose, let go, 2  
**ancora, -ae f.:** anchor, 3  
**angustus, -a, -um:** narrow, confined, 4  
**aridus, -a, -um:** dry, 3  
**armamentum, -ī m.:** equipment, tackle, 1  
**auxilior, -ārī:** to help, assist, support, 1  
**clam:** secretly, in secret, 1s  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**coniūrātio, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**constō, -āre, -stitī:** stand fixed; is agreed, 2  
**cūrō (1):** care for, attend to, manage, 1  
**dēducō, -ere:** to lead or draw down or away, 3  
**dēligō (1):** to tie down, fasten, 2  
**enim:** for, indeed, in truth, 3  
**exiguitās, -tātis, f.:** smallness, tininess, 1  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus:** break, 1  
**fūnis, -is m.:** a rope, cord  
**hiemo (1):** spend the winter, pass the winter, 3  
**hiems, hiemis f.:** winter, storm, 4  
**incognitus, -a, -um:** unknown, unexamined, 1  
**intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lectum:** to understand, 2  
**interclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, clūsum:** close off, 1

**inūtīlis, -e:** useless, unprofitable, 1  
**lūna, -ae f.:** moon, 1  
**maritimus, -a, -um:** maritime, marine, 1  
**nāvigō (1):** to sail, 2  
**necesse:** necessary; (it is) necessary, 4  
**nēmō, nūllius, nēmīnī, -em, nūllō:** no one, 3  
**Ōceanus, ī m.:** Oceanus, 3  
**onerārius, -a, -um:** transport ship; 2  
**oportet:** it is proper, fitting, necessary, 2  
**optimus, -a, -um:** best, noblest, finest, 1  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (1):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**paulātīm:** gradually, little by little, 3  
**perturbātio, -tiōnis f.:** confusion, disorder, 1  
**plēnus, -a, -um:** full, full of, 1  
**postēā:** thereafter, afterwards, 1  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**prōducō, -ere, -dūxī, ductum:** lead forward 2  
**prōvideō, -ere, -vidī, -visum:** to foresee, take  
precautions, prepare for 3  
**rebellio, -lliōnis f.:** revolt, renewal of war, 1  
**reditus, -ūs m.:** a return, a coming back, 1  
**reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** restore, repair, 2  
**reportō (1):** to carry back, 1  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**subducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** draw up., 2  
**tempestās, tempestātis f.:** storm, 3  
**transportō (1):** carry over, take across, 3

- 1 **Eādem nocte on...;** abl. of time when  
**accidit ut: it happened that...;** noun result  
clause commonly follows impersonal accidit  
**esset: there was; impf. subj. sum**  
**quī diēs: which time...;** “which day;” rel. adj.  
**aestūs maximōs:** calculated to be August 30,  
55 BC thus dating the entire expedition  
2 **nostrīs: to our (men);** dat. of interest  
3 **ūnō tempore:** abl. of time when  
**et longās nāvēs...et onerāriās (nāvēs): both**  
**the long ships and the freight (ships)**  
**quibus:** abl. of means, relative pronoun  
**transportandum (esse): that...was to be**  
**transported;** “was going to be transported”  
passive periphrastic (gerundive + missing inf.  
of sum) express obligation or necessity;  
exercitum is acc. subject of this infinitive in  
indirect discourse  
4 **subdūxerat: drew up;** as a prefix sub- often  
means “up from under” or just “up”  
5 **nostrīs: to our (men);** dat. of indirect object  
6 **administrandī aut auxiliandī:** gen. sg.  
gerunds (verbal nouns), translate in English  
with -ing, modifying the subject facultās  
7 **complūribus...fractīs:** abl. absolute  
**reliquae cum essent...inūtīlēs: since the**  
**remaining (ships) were...;** causal; impf. subj.  
8 **ad navigandum: for...;** ad + gerund expresses  
purpose, here qualifying inūtīlēs  
7 **magna:** modifies fem. sg. perturbātio below  
**id quod: that which...;** apposition to perturbātio  
9 **tōtius exercitūs:** subjective gen. sg.  
10 **possent: they might be able;** impf. subj. in a  
relative clause of purpose  
**dēerant:** impf. dēsum  
**ad reficiendās nāvēs: for repairing...;** ad +  
noun + gerundive expressing purpose; employ  
a gerund-gerundive flip in the translation  
11 **erant usuī: were of use;** dative of purpose  
**constābat: it was agreed to all to...;** “stood  
fixed” + oportere, Caesar had planned to  
spend the winter in Gaul, so he brought  
insufficient amount of grain to Britain  
12 **in hiemem: (well) into the winter**  
13 **quibus rēbus: these things...;** abl. abs.  
**inter sē: to one another;** “among themselves”  
**Rōmānīs dēesse: were falling short for the**  
**Romans;** dat. of interest, inf. dēsum  
16 **quae...erant angustiora: which was...;**  
neut. pl. castra is the antecedent  
**hōc...quod: because of this... (namely)**  
**because,”** abl. of cause

#### Popular Uses of Subjunctive in Caesar

Practical Note: identify and translate most subjunctives in the tense you find them.

	How to identify	special translation	example
1. Purpose, adverbial or relative	<i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	may/might	<i>ut Caesar mitteret so that Caesar might send</i>
2. Result, adverbial or noun clause	<i>ut/ut nōn</i> (neg.)	none	<i>ut Caesar mitteret that Caesar sent</i>
3. Cum-Clauses	<i>Cum</i> + subjunctive	none	<i>Cum Caesar mitteret When Caesar sent</i>
4. Indirect Question	interrogatives: e.g. <i>quis, cūr</i>	none	<i>nōvit quōs Caesar mitteret he learned whom Caesar sent</i>
5. Indirect Command	commanding verb + <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	none	<i>persuāsit ut Caesar mitteret he persuaded that Caesar send</i>
6. Relative Clause of Characteristic	<i>quī, quod</i> + subj.	none/would	<i>quōs Caesar mitteret the sort whom Caesar would send</i>
7. Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc.	any subordinate verb in an acc. + inf. construction	none	<i>eōs, sī id mitteret, lēgere that they read it, if he sent it</i>
8. Future-Less-Vivid	<i>sī</i> pres. subj., pres. subj.	should/would	<i>sī sit, mittat if he should be...he would send</i>
9. Pres. Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> impf. subj., impf. subj.	were/would	<i>sī esset, mitteret if he were...he would send</i>
10. Past Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> plpf. subj., plpf. subj.	had/would have	<i>sī fuisset, mīssisset if he had been...he would have</i>



30.2. optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frumentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod eīs superātis aut reditū interclusis nēminem posteā bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam transitūrum cōnfidēbant. 3. Itaque rursus coniuratiōne factā paulātim ex castris discedere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt.

31.1 At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant fore id quod accidit suspiciābātur. 2. Itaque ad omnēs casūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frumentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictāe erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant usuī ex continētī comportārī iūbēbat. 3. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrāretur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut navigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

32.1 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetudine ūnā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII., neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpōsitā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nuntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam consuetūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

**afflictō (I):** damage, agitate, knock about, 1  
**administrō (I):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**aes, aeris n.:** bronze, copper, 2  
**āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** lose, let go, 2  
**clam:** secretly, in secret, 1  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**commeātus, -ūs m.:** convoy, traffic, trip, 1  
**commodus, -a, -um:** convenient, suitable, 2  
**comparō (I):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**comportō (I):** carry together, collect, 3  
**cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** bring together, gather, 2  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**coniuratiō, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**conlocō (I):** place, settle, arrange, 1  
**continēns, continentis f.:** the continent, mainland, 3  
**cotidiē:** daily, every day, 1  
**dēducō, -ere:** lead or draw down or away, 3  
**ēventus, -ūs m.:** outcome, consequence, result, 2  
**factū:** to do (supine), 2  
**frumentor, -ārī:** to forage, fetch corn, 1  
**hiems, hiemis f.:** winter, storm, 4  
**intercludō, -ere, -clūsi, clūsum:** close off, 1  
**interpōnō, -ere, -posuī:** include, introduce, 2  
**materia, -ae f.:** timber, wood, material, 2

**navigō (I):** to sail, 2  
**nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, -em, nūllō:** no one, 3  
**nōndum:** not yet, 3  
**nuntiō (I):** announce, report, 2  
**optimus, -a, -um:** best, noblest, finest, 1  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (I):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**paulātim:** gradually, little by little, 3  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, entrance, 1  
**posteā:** thereafter, afterwards, 1  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**prōducō, -ere, -dūxi, ductum:** lead forth, 2  
**pulvis, pulveris m.:** dust, dirt, 1  
**rebellio, -lliōnis f.:** revolt, renewal of war, 1  
**reditus, -ūs m.:** a return, a coming back, 1  
**reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** restore, repair, 2  
**remanēō, ēre, mansī, mansum:** remain, 1  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**satis:** enough, sufficient, 2  
**statio, statiōnis f.:** post, station, anchorage, 3  
**studium, -i n.:** zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3  
**suspicio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4  
**suspīcor, -ārī, suspicātum:** to suspect, 3  
**transportō (I):** carry over, take across, 3  
**ventitō (I):** to come often, resort to, 2

- 1 **optimum esse:** *that it was best*; ind. discourse, the subject is prohibere and producere  
**factū:** *in fact*; supine (verbal noun), abl. respect  
**dūxērunt:** *they considered*; "they calculated"  
**rebellione factā:** abl. absolute  
**frumentō commeātūque:** *from...;* abl. of separation governed prohibere  
2 **nostrōs** *our (men)*  
**producere** *to prolong, to draw out*  
**eīs...interclusis:** abl. absolute; eīs = hīs  
**reditū:** *from a return*; abl. separation  
3 **nēminem:** *no one*; acc. subject from nēmō  
**bellī inferendī causā:** *for the sake of waging...;* causā behaves as a preposition with a preceding gen.; here a gerundive which we translate with the gerundive-gerund flip  
**transitūrum (esse):** fut. inf. transeō with acc. subject nēminem  
5 **suōs:** *their (men)*; i.e. the Britons, obj. of dēducere  
6 **et...et:** *both...and*  
7 **ex eō quod:** *from the fact that*; "from this (fact) because," eō is a demonstrative  
**dare intermiserant:** *had ceased to give...*  
**fore...accidit:** *that it would be that which happened*; ind. discourse, fore is equivalent to futurum esse, the fut. inf. of sum, governed by suspiciābātur  
8 **ad omnēs casūs:** *for...;* expressing purpose  
**et...et:** *both...and*;  
9 **quae...nāvēs, eārum...aere:** *the timber and bronze of those (ships), which ships...;* the relative clause precedes the antecedent eārum, materiā atque aere are abl. object of impf. ūtor  
10 **ad...reficiendās:** *for...;* ad + gerundive again expressing purpose, readers should employ the

- gerundive-gerund flip, and translate the verb form as a gerund with an acc. object  
**reliquās (nāvēs):** *the rest (of the ships)*  
11 **quae...usuī:** *the (things) which were of use...;* usuī is dative of purpose, cf. 29.4  
**ad eās rēs:** *for...;* ad + acc expressing purpose  
**continētī:** 3<sup>rd</sup> declension i-stem abl. sg.  
12 **summō studiō:** abl. of manner with adjective does not require "cum;" this cum begins a causal cum-clause (since) with administrāretur  
**administrāretur:** *it was managed*; impf. subj.  
**reliquīs ut...effēcit:** *he brought it about that that the remaining ships were able to be sailed conveniently enough*; a noun result clause after effēcit, "brought it about"  
14 **ex consuetudine:** *according to custom*; abl. of source; the adj. ūnā modifies legiōne  
**frumentātum:** *to get grain*; supine, acc. usually expresses purpose  
15 **VII: the 7<sup>th</sup> (legion);** predicate nominative  
**ūllā...suspiciōne interpōsitā:** abl. absolute  
16 **cum pars hominum...pars:** *while some of the men...(and) others...;* asyndeton  
**ventitāret:** *kept coming*; impf. subj. with cum, frequentative form of veniō  
**eī quī...:** *those who...*  
17 **pulverem...vidērī:** *that...;* indirect discourse, pulverem is acc. subj.  
**pulverem maiōrem quam:** *more dust than...;* comparative  
18 **consuetūdo ferret:** *custom bore out*; i.e. usual impf. subj., verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are subjunctive  
**in eā parte:** *in that direction*  
**quam in partem:** *into which direction*; in quam partem  
19 **fēcisset:** plpf. subj., relative cl. of characteristic

### Gerundives

A gerundive, a future passive participle (stem + nd + 1<sup>st</sup> & 2<sup>nd</sup> decl. endings) agrees with a noun in case, number, and gender. Though it can be translated many ways: "going/about/worthy to be freed" or "to be freed," we often employ a gerund-gerundive flip and translate it as a gerund:

Genitive	suī liberandī	for freeing themselves	
	bellī inferendī causā	for the sake of waging war	gen. + causā expresses purpose
Accusative	ad nāvēs reficiendās	for repairing ships	ad + gerundive expresses purpose
Ablative	in petendā pāce	in seeking peace	

**Passive Periphrastic (gerundive + sum )** expresses obligation or necessity and governs a dative of agent. Translate it with "must" or "has to" or "ought" in the present and "had to" in the past.

faciendum esset	it had to be done	in subjunctive
sibi iter faciendum esse	that a journey must be made by him	in ind. discourse

32.2 Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid nōvī ā barbarīs inītum cōnsiliī, 1  
cohortēs quae in statiōne erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs  
duās in statiōnem succedere, reliquās armārī et confestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

3. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque 5  
aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla coīcī  
animadvertit. 4. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus demessō frūmentō pars  
ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs  
delituerant; 5. tum dispersōs depōsitīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō  
adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul  
equitātū atque ēssedīs circumdederant. 10

33.1 Genus hoc est ex ēssedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant  
et tēla coīciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs  
plērumque perturbant et, cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāverunt, ex  
ēssedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. 2. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō  
excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitudine hostium  
premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. 3. Ita mobilitātem  
equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū  
cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in declivī ac praecipitī lōcō incitātōs  
equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in  
iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere consuerint. 20

**adorior, -ārī, -ortus sum:** rise up, attack, 2  
**aeger, -gra, -grum:** sick, weary, 4  
**armō (1):** to arm, 1  
**auriga, ae m.:** charioteer, driver, 1  
**brevis, -e:** short, 3  
**circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus:** surround, 1  
**citus, -a, -um:** swift, quick, 1  
**confertus, a, um:** crowded together, dense, 3  
**cōnfestim:** immediately, 4  
**conlocō (1):** place, settle, arrange, 1  
**cotidiānus, -a, -um:** daily, of every day, 3  
**currus, -ūs m.:** chariot, cart, 2  
**dēclivis, -e:** sloping, inclined downwards, 1  
**dēlitescō, -ere, -tūi:** conceal oneself, lie hid 1  
**dēmetō, -ere, messuī, messum:** reap, mow 1  
**dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** put down, 1  
**dēsiliō, -ire, -lūi:** to jump down, dismount, 4  
**dispersō, -ere, -spersī, spersum:** scatter, 1  
**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 4  
**ēssedum, -ī n.:** war-chariot (Gallic word), 3  
**excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** go out, 3  
**exercitātiō, -iōnis f.:** training, practice, 2  
**expeditus, -a, -um:** unimpeded, fast, 4  
**flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum:** turn, bend, 1  
**hūc:** to this place, hither, here 2

**incertus, -a, -um:** unreliable, doubtful, 2  
**inde:** from there, then, afterward, 3  
**ineō, -ire, īi, -itum:** go into, enter, 1  
**insinuō (1):** to insinuate, wind a way in, 1  
**insistō, -ere, -stīti:** set on, set about; stop, 2  
**iugum, -ī n.:** yoke, (mountain) range, 2  
**metō, ere, messuī, messum:** reap, harvest, 1  
**mobilitās, -tātis f.:** mobility, 1  
**moderor, -ārī, -ātum:** restrain, regulate, 1  
**noctū:** by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4  
**noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum:** to learn, 1  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 4  
**paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 4  
**paulātim:** little by little, gradually, 3  
**pedes, peditis m.:** foot soldier, infantry; *adj.* on foot, 1  
**percurrō, -ere, -cucurrī:** run through, 1  
**perequitō (1):** to ride (a horse) through, 1  
**praeceps, praecipitīs adj.:** headlong; steep, 1  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** proceed, 3  
**proelior, -ārī:** to give battle, fight, 1  
**rota, -ae f.:** wheel, 1  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**simul:** at the same time (as); together, 4  
**stabilitas, -tātis f.:** stability, firmness, 1  
**statio, statiōnis f.:** post, station, anchorage, 3

**streptus, -ūs m.:** creaking, rustling, rushing, 1  
**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus:** go up,  
approach, 2  
**suspicator, -ārī, suspicātum:** to suspect, 3

**tēmō, -ōnis m.:** pole, beam (of a wagon), 1  
**terror, terroris m.:** terror, fear, 1  
**turma, -ae f.:** troop of cavalry (30 men), 1

1 **id, quod erat:** *that which was (the case)*  
**aliquid nōvī...cōnsiliī:** (*namely that*) *some new*  
*plan*; partitive gen., aliquid is acc. subj. of  
inītum (esse),  
**inītum (esse):** *had been initiated*; pf. pass. ineō  
2 **cohortēs...duās...reliquās...iussit:** *ordered*  
*the cohorts to...two (cohorts) to... the*  
*remaining (cohorts) to...;* acc. object of iussit  
**in eam partem:** *into that direction*  
**ex reliquīs:** *from the remaining (cohorts)*  
3 **armārī:** *to arm themselves*; “to be armed”  
**subsequī:** present deponent inf.  
4 **paulō longius:** *a little farther*; abl. of degree of  
difference with comparative adverb  
**processisset:** plpf. subjunctive  
**suōs:** *that his (soldiers)*; acc. subj. of pass. inf.  
premi, sustinēre and pass. inf. coīcī in an ind.  
discourse governed by animadvertit  
5 **partibus:** *directions*  
**coīcī:** pass. inf. coīcīō, -ere  
6 **omnī...demessō frūmentō:** abl. abs., omnī is i-  
stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj. modifying frūmentō  
7 **ūna, reliqua:** pars is feminine in gender  
**suspiciātī hostēs:** *the enemy having suspected*  
*that...;* hostēs is nom. subj. of delituerant  
**nostrōs:** *that our (men)*; acc. subj.  
**esse ventūrōs:** ventūrōs esse; fut. inf. veniō  
8 **dispersōs...occupātōs:** (*our soldiers*)  
*dispersed...and occupied*; acc. d.o. of adortī  
**adortī:** (*the enemy*) *having attacked...*  
**depōsitīs armīs:** abl. absolute; the men put  
down their weapons to gather food

**metendō:** *harvesting*; gerund of meteō  
9 **paucīs interfectīs:** abl. absolute  
**incertīs ordinibus:** *in unfixed ranks*  
11 **pugnae:** *of fighting*; modifies genus  
**prīmō:** *at first*; abl. time when  
**partēs:** *directions*  
13 **cum...insinuāverunt:** *when...;* + indicative,  
cum is adverbial not a prep.; sēsē is acc. d.o.  
14 **pedibus:** *on foot*; “by feet,” abl. of manner  
**Aurigae:** *drivers*; the drivers carried soldiers  
to battle, waited at a safe distance, and then  
returned to pick up soldiers when summoned  
15 **ita...ut:** *in such a way...that*; introducing a  
result clause, pres. subj. in primary sequence  
16 **expeditum...receptum:** *an easy recovery for*  
*their (people)*; “an unencumbered recovery”  
17 **tantum:** *only*; adverb  
18 **efficiunt utī...consuerint:** *they bring it about*  
*that they have become accustomed...;* noun  
result clause, utī is another form for ut (utī is  
inf. of ūtor) and consuerint is perfect subj.  
19 **sustinere:** *to restrain*; “hold up”  
**brevī (tempore):** *in a short (time)*; time when  
**per temōnem...in iugō:** The Britons ran out  
from the chariot onto the wooden pole (tēmō)  
attached between the two horses to the chariot.  
Then they stood on the harness (iugum)  
binding the horses together  
22 **sē...recipere:** *retreat*; a common idiom, “take  
themselves back”  
**citissimē:** superlative adverb

#### Indirect Discourse: Accusative Subject + Infinitive

In secondary sequence, translate a present infinitive as imperfect, perfect as pluperfect, and “will” as “would.”

Present	Caesarem militēs mittere (says) that Caesar is <i>sending</i> soldiers (said) that Caesar <i>was sending</i> soldiers	militēs ā Caesar mittī (says) that the soldiers <i>are sent</i> by Caesar (says) that the soldiers <i>were sent</i> by Caesar
Perfect	Caesarem militēs mīssisse (says) that Caesar <i>has sent</i> * soldiers (said) that Caesar <i>had sent</i> soldiers	militēs ā Caesar mīssōs esse (says) that the soldiers <i>has been sent</i> * by C. (said) that the soldiers <i>had been sent</i> by C.
Future	Caesarem militēs mīssūrum esse (says) that Caesar <i>will send</i> soldiers (said) that Caesar <i>would send</i> soldiers	*alternatives: <i>sent, were sent</i>

34.1 Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitate pugnae tempore 1  
 opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventū hostēs  
 constitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore recepērunt. 2. Quō factō, ad lacessendum  
 hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē  
 locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. 3. Dum 5  
 haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis quī erant in agrīs reliquī  
 discessērunt. 4. Secutae sunt continuōs complurēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et  
 nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

5. Interim barbarī nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērunt paucitātemque  
 nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in 10  
 perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,  
 demonstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudine peditātūs  
 equitātūsque coactā ad castra vērunt.

35.1 Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī  
 essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs 15  
 circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrēbās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum  
 transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs constituit. 2. Commissō proeliō  
 diutius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga  
 vertērunt. 3. Quōs tantō spatiō secutī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere  
 potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque 20  
 aedificiīs incensīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36.1 Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pace vērunt.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2  
 aciēs, -ē f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 2  
 aedificium, -ii n.: building, edifice, 2  
 alienus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 2  
 ante: before, in front of (acc); adv. before, 4  
 Atrēbas, Atrēbātis, m.: Atrēbates, 3  
 auxilium, -ii n.: help, aid, assistance, 3  
 brevis, -e: short, 3  
 committō, -ere: commence, commit, entrust 4  
 Commius, -i m.: Commius, 2  
 continuus, -a, -um: continuous, unceasing, 1  
 cursus, -us m.: course, running, haste, 3  
 deinde: then, next, from that place, 1  
 dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus: send (away), 3  
 diū: a long time, long, 1  
 effugiō, -ere, -fugi: flee out, escape, 1  
 expellō, ere, puli, pulsum: drive out, expel 2  
 incendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 2  
 lacessō, -ere, -ivi: provoke, goad, irritate, 1  
 latē: widely, far and wide, 2  
 liberō (1): free, liberate, 3

namque: to be sure, for, 1  
 nanciscor, nancisci, nactus: obtain, meet, 1  
 novitas, -tatis f.: newness, strangeness, 1  
 occidō, -ere, occidi, occisus: kill, cut down 4  
 occupō (1): seize, occupy, 4  
 opportunus, -a, -um: fit, suitable, useful, 2  
 paucitas, -tatis f. (1): fewness, scarcity, 3  
 peditatus, -us m.: infantry, 3  
 pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsus: drive, push, 2  
 perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4  
 praeda, -ae f.: loot, spoils, cattle, 2  
 praedicō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2  
 reducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus: to bring back, 3  
 sequor, -i, secutus: follow, pursue, 4  
 spatium, -ii n.: space, room, extent, 4  
 tempestās, tempestātis f.: storm, 3  
 tergum, -i n.: back, hide, rear, 1  
 timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 2  
 transportō (1): carry over, take across, 3  
 vertō, -ere, -si, -rsus: turn, change, 1  
 vis, vis, f., pl. virēs: force, power, violence, 4

- 1 quibus rēbus: because of these things; “which things,” abl. of cause  
 perturbātis nostrīs: our (men) having been set into confusion; abl. abs.  
 novitate pugnae: abl. of means with perturbātis  
 tempore opportunissimō: abl. of time when  
 2 tulit: perfect, ferō  
 hostēs: nom. subject  
 3 constitērunt: stopped; “stood still”  
 sē...recēpērunt: retreated; idiom  
 quō factō: this having been done; “which having been done,” abl. abs.  
 ad...aliēnum esse tempus: that it was an unfavorable time...; ind. discourse governed by perfect deponent pple arbitratus  
 ad lacessendum...committendum: for provoking...; ad + gerundives: in a gerund-gerundive flip; the gerundives should be translated as gerunds (-ing) with acc. objs.  
 4 suō sē locō continuit: he held his ground; “held himself in his position”  
 6 qui erant...reliqui: (those) who...; the antecedent is subject of discessērunt  
 7 secūtae sunt: pf. deponent, subject tempestātēs  
 continuōs...diēs: for...; acc. of duration  
 quae...continenērent...prohibērent: which (sort) contained...; or “which would contain...” relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj.  
 10 suīs: to their people; dat. indirect object  
 quanta...facultās...darētur: how great an opportunity would...; indirect question governed by demonstrāvērunt  
 praedae faciendae: of freeing...; gerund-gerundive flip; translate the gerundive as a gerund; modifying facultās  
 in perpetuum: forever; “into perpetuity”  
 11 suī liberandī: of freeing themselves; gerund-
- gerundive flip; modifying facultās  
 castrīs: from...; abl. separation  
 expulissent: plpf. subj.  
 12 hīs rēbus: because of these matters; abl. cause  
 multitudine...coactā: ablative absolute  
 14 idem fore: the same thing...would happen...; “same thing...would be,” ind. disc. governed by vidēbat, fore is equivalent to futurum esse, fut. infinitive of sum, esse;  
 superiōribus diēbus: in the days before yesterday; abl. time when  
 ut...effugerent: (namely) that...; noun result clause in apposition to idem  
 15 essent pulsī: plpf. passive subjunctive, pellō  
 celeritāte: with speed; abl. of manner  
 nactus: pf. deponent pple, nanciscor  
 dē quō: concerning whom  
 16 dictum est: it was mentioned (by me)  
 17 commissō proeliō: the battle having been begun; common idiom, proelium committō  
 18 diūtius: longer; comparative adv. diū  
 nostrōrum mīlitum: subject gen. + impetum  
 hostēs: nom. subject of potuērunt, pf. possum  
 ferre: to endure  
 19 quōs...secuti: having pursued these (Britons); “having pursued whom”  
 tantō spatiō...quantum: by as great an interval as; abl. of degree of difference  
 19 cursū et vīribus: with speed and (troop) force; vīribus denotes troop size; abl. manner  
 20 potuērunt...occidērunt: the Roman cavalry is the subject, complūrēs is the direct object  
 omnibus...incensīs: abl. absolute  
 longē lātēque: far and wide  
 21 sē recēpērunt: retreated, “took themselves back”  
 22 Eōdem diē: abl. time when

## Gerunds

A gerund (present stem + nd + 2 <sup>nd</sup> decl. neut. sg. endings) is a verbal noun. It can govern an acc. obj. and is easy to distinguish from a gerundive because a gerund has only -ī/-ō/-um endings and does not modify a nearby noun.	Gen. navigandī Dat. navigandō Acc. navigandum Abl. navigandō	of sailing for sailing sailing by sailing
Nominative	Navigāre est difficile. To sail is difficult.	an infinitive not gerund as subject
Genitive	facultās navigandī navigandī causā utilis navigandō	opportunity for sailing for the sake of sailing useful for sailing
Dative	ad navigandum	for sailing (to sail)
Accusative	navigandō	by sailing
Ablative	in navigandō	in sailing
	ulciscendī Rōmānōs	of avenging the Romans
		occasionally with an acc. object

13.1 In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, 1  
genera sunt duo. Nam plebēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet  
per sē, nullō adhibētur cōnsiliō. 2. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut  
magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in  
servitūtem dicant nōbilibus: in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in 5  
servōs. 3. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum equitum.  
4. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia publica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religīōnēs  
interpretantur: ad hōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā  
concurrat, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. 5. Nam ferē dē omnibus  
controversiīs publicīs privātisque constituunt et, sī quod est admissum 10  
facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, idem  
decernunt, praemia poenāsque constituunt; 6. sī quī aut privātus aut populus  
eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdicunt. Haec poena apud eōs est  
gravissima. 7. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac  
scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermonemque 15  
dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus  
ius redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. 8. Hīs autem omnibus  
Druidibus praest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritātem.

**aditus, -ūs m.:** approach, access, entrance, 2  
**adhībēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** hold toward, admit, apply, 1  
**admittō, -ere, mīsi, missum:** admit, commit, allow, 2  
**adulescens, -ntis m./f.:** youth, 1  
**aes, aeris n.:** bronze, copper, 2  
**alienus, -a, -um:** of another, foreign, 2  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.:** influence, clout, 3  
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum:** dare, venture, 4  
**caedēs, caedis f.:** murder, slaughter, killing 2  
**communicō (1):** share, impart, 4  
**concurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursus:** run eagerly, clash, 2  
**contāgiō, -giōnis f.:** contact; contagion, 1  
**dēcēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum:** depart, withdraw, die, 4  
**dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētum:** decide, judge, 3  
**dēfugiō, -ere, -fūgi:** to flee away, avoid, 1  
**dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum:** dedicate, devote, 1  
**divinus, -a, -um:** divine, 1  
**dominus, -ī m.:** master, 1  
**facinus, facinoris n.:** deed; bad deed, crime 2  
**hērēditas, -tātis f.:** inheritance, 1  
**honor(s), -ōris m.:** honor, glory; offering, 2  
**impius, -a, -um:** unholy, impious, 1  
**incommodus, -a, -um:** unfortunate, disastrous, 3  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4

**interdicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictum:** to forbid, prohibit,  
outlaw, 2  
**interpretor, -ārī, :** to translate, interpret, 1  
**intersum, -esse, -fui:** take part in, engage in, 1  
**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 2  
**nōbilis, -e:** noble, renowned, 3  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 2  
**plebs, plēbis, f.:** common people, masses, 2  
**plērusque, -raque, -rumque:** very many, 2  
**poena, poenae, f.:** punishment, penalty, 3  
**potēns, -entis:** powerful, ruling (*gen.*), 2  
**praesum, -esse, -fui:** be over, preside over, 2  
**prōcūrō (1):** take care of, look after, 1  
**reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus:** give back, return, 2  
**religiō, religiōnis f.:** superstitious rites, ritual,  
divine manifestation, 3  
**sacrificium, ī n.:** sacrifice, 4  
**scelerātus, -a, -um:** wicked, profane, guilty 1  
**sermo, -mōnis m.:** conversation, discourse, 3  
**servitūs, servitūtis, f.:** servitude, 2  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 1  
**stō, -āre, steti, stātum:** stand still, stop, 3  
**tribūtum, -ī n.:** tribute, tax, contribution, 2

- 1 **eōrum hominum quī:** of all these peoples  
who; partitive genitive  
**aliquō numerō...honōre:** are of some account  
and honor; abl. of description, here predicate of  
sunt  
2 **plebēs:** the masses; though plural, it governs a  
3<sup>rd</sup> sg. verb  
**habētur:** are considered (to be); “are held”  
**locō:** in the position...; i.e. status in life  
3 **per sē:** by themselves; lit. “through themselves”  
**adhibētur:** are admitted; + dat. of compound  
**cōnsiliō:** council; “assembly,” dat. compound  
4 **cum...premutur:** when they are  
overwhelmed; cum is an adverbial conjunction  
**aere aliēnō:** by debt; lit. “another’s money”  
**portentiōrum:** of those more powerful; gen. pl.  
sēsē; themselves; emphatic form of sē  
**dicant:** they dedicate; 1<sup>st</sup> conj. pres., not dicō  
5 **sunt:** (they) have; “are (to them),” supply  
dat. of possession ēs, parallel to dominīs  
**in hōs:** over them; “towards them,” i.e. plebēs  
**quae dominīs:** which masters (have); “which  
(there are) to masters,” dat. of possession with  
missing linking verb sunt  
**in servōs:** over slaves; “towards slaves”  
6 **alterum (genus)...alterum (genus):** one...the  
other; neuter in agreement with missing genus  
7 **illi:** i.e. Druids, nom. pl.  
**rēbus dīvinīs:** dat. obj. of compound intersunt  
**intersunt...(et) prōcūrant...(et)**  
**interpretantur:** asyndeton, add conjunctions  
9 **disciplīnae causā:** for the sake of training  
**magnō...honōre:** of great honor; abl. of  
description in the predicative position after sunt  
**apud eōs:** among them; i.e. among the Gauls  
10 **sī quod...facinus:** if any crime...; aliquis,  
aliquid is a common indefinite adjective

- (any, some), but quī, quod is commonly used  
as an indefinite (which → any, some) after sī,  
nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this  
construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num,  
and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words  
indefinite aliquid becomes just quod)  
11 **facta (est):** has been committed; pf. pass.  
**dē hērēditāte (aut) dē fīnibus:** asyndeton,  
supply “aut”  
12 **idem:** likewise  
**sī quī:** if anyone...; quī indefinite before sī, see  
line 10 above  
13 **dēcrētō nōn stetit:** did not abide by the  
decision; “did not stand by the (thing) having  
been decided; abl. place where; pf. stō, stāre  
**sacrificiis:** from the sacrifices; abl. separation  
14 **apud eōs:** among them; i.e. among the Gauls  
**quibus...est interdictum, hī:** these for whom  
it has been prohibited; “for whom it has been  
prohibited, these...” hī is the antecedent of the  
relative clause beginning with quibus  
**numerō:** in the number, group; place where  
15 **habentur:** are considered (to be); “are held  
(to be),” see line 2 above  
**hīs:** from these; i.e. from those placed in the  
group of the wicked; abl. of separation  
**dēcēdunt (et)...dēfugiunt:** asyndeton, supply  
a conjunction  
**aditum:** an encounter  
16 **nē quid incommodī:** lest anything unsuitable;  
quid is indefinite following sī, nisi, num, or  
nē; incommodī is a partitive gen.  
**neque...neque:** neither...nor  
**hīs petentibus:** to these seeking; pres. pple  
petō is condition in force; dat. indirect object  
17 **praest:** is over (+ dat); compound verbs  
often govern a dative object

## Common Uses of the Dative

construction	example	translation
Dative of Indirect Object	eī filiam dat	gives his daughter to him
Dative of Compound Verbs	Druidibus praest	is over the Druids
Dative of Agent + Pass. Periphrastic	sibi iter faciendum esse	a journey must be made by him
Dative of Purpose	hibernis munitum	fortified for winter-quarters
Dative of Possession + sum	quae dominīs sunt	which are to masters (= masters have)
Dative of Interest (Advantage)	nostris gravissimus	most grievous for our men
Dative of Reference*	mihī videtur	it seems to me (i.e. from my viewpoint)
Dative of Special Adjectives	fūgae similem	similar to flight
Double Dative (purpose + interest)	magnō ūsuī nostris fuit	was for a great use to our men → served a great use to our men

\*for some, interest and reference are the same construction



13.9 Hōc mortuō aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte succēdit, aut, sī sunt 1  
plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō Druidum, nōnumquam etiam armīs dē principātū  
contendunt. 10. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnūtum, quae regiō  
tōtius Galliae media habētur, consīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs  
undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque decrētīs iudiciisque 5  
parent. 11. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta esse  
exīstimātur. 12. et nunc, quī diligentius eam rem cognōscere voluit,  
plērūmque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

14.1 Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuerunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs  
pendunt; militīae vacatiōnem omniumque rērum habent immunitātem. 2. 10  
Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā  
parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. 3. Magnum ibi numerum versuum  
ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnullī vicēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. 4.  
Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus,  
publicīs privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē 15  
causīs īstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint  
neque eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre: quod ferē  
plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārū diligentiam in perdiscendō ac  
memoriam remittant. 5. In primīs hoc volunt persuādere, nōn interīre  
animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem transīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad 20  
virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praeterea dē sideribus  
atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrarū magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē  
deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

**anima**, -ae f.: breath, spirit, soul, 1  
**Carnūtēs**, -um: Carnutes, 4  
**confidō**, -ere, **confisus sum**: trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**consecrō** (1): dedicate to a god, make holy 2  
**consideō**, -ere, -sēdī: to sit down, settle, 2  
**contendō**, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4  
**dēcernō**, ere, **crēvī**, **crētum**: decide, judge, 3  
**deus**, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 4  
**dignitās**, -tātis f.: worth, merit, worthiness, 1  
**diligēns**, -entis: careful, diligent, accurate, 2  
**diligentia**, -ae f.: diligence, attentiveness, 1  
**discō**, -ere, -didici: learn, get to know, 2  
**disputō** (1): reckon, debate, argue, 1  
**ēdiscō**, -ere, -didici: to learn thoroughly, 1  
**efferrō**, -ferre, -tulī, **ēlātus**: raise, lift up 4  
ego: I, 2  
**excellō**, -ere, : be distinguished, excel, 1  
**excitō** (1): excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3  
**fās** n.: right, divine law, duty, 1  
**Graecus**, -a, -um: Greek, 2  
**hūc**: to this place, hither, here 2

**immortalis**, -e: immortal, 3  
**immunitās**, -tātis f.: exception, immunity, 1  
**inde**: from there, then, afterward, 3  
**instituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set, establish, 3  
**intereō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to die, perish, 3  
**iudicium**, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial 3  
**iuventūs**, -tūtis f.: youth, 1  
**mandō** (1): order, command, commit, 2  
**medius** -a -um: in the middle of, 3  
**memoria**, -ae f.: memory, 4  
**metus**, -ūs f.: dread, fear, 2  
**militia**, -ae f.: military service; military, 2  
**morior**, **mori**, **mortuus sum**: die, 2  
**mōtus**, -ūs m.: motion, 3  
**mundus**, -ī m.: the world, 1  
**nātūra**, -ae f.: nature, 3  
**neglegō**, ere, -lēxī, **neglēctum**: to neglect, 3  
**nōnnullus**, -a, -um: some, not none, 2  
**nōnumquam**: sometimes, not never, 1  
**nunc**: now, at present, 2  
**pār**, **paris**: equal, similar, even, 2

**parens**, -rentis m.: parent, ancestor, 1  
**pāreō**, -ere, -uī, **pāritum**: obey, yield (dat) 1  
**pendō**, -ere, **pependī**, **pensum**: pay, weigh 2  
**perdiscō**, -ere, -didici: learn thoroughly, 1  
**permaneō**, -ere, -mansī: to remain, stay, 1  
**plērusque**, -raque, -rumque: very many, 2  
**plūs** (**plūris**): more, 4  
**potestās**, -tātis f.: power, ability, capacity, 3  
**praesidium**, -ī n.: guard, protection; assistance, 2  
**praeterea**: besides, hereafter, 2  
**principātus**, -ūs m.: leadership, rule, 2  
**propinquus**, -a, -um: near, close; *subst.* kinsman, 2  
**putō** (1): to think, imagine, 3  
**regiō**, **regiōnis** f.: region, area, 1  
**remittō**, -ere, -misi: send back, let go, relax, 4

**reperiō**, -ire, **repperī**, **reperitum**: to discover, find, 1  
**sīdus**, **sīderis** n.: star; group of stars, constellation, 1  
**sponte**: willingly, voluntarily, 2  
**studeō**, -ere, **uī**: be eager, strive after, 1  
**succedō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go up, approach, 2  
**suffrāgium**, -ī n.: a vote, 1  
**terra**, -ae f.: earth, ground, land, 2  
**tradō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum: to give over, hand down, 3  
**transferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**: carry across, 1  
**tribūtum**, -ī n.: tribute, tax, contribution, 2  
**vacatiō**, -tiōnis f.: exemption, immunity 1  
**vertō**, -ere, -si, -rsus: turn, change, 1  
**vicenī**, -a, -um: twenty each, 1  
**vīs**, **vīs**, f., pl. **virēs**: force, power, violence, 4  
**vulgus**, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 2

1 **Hōc mortuō**: *this (one) having died*; i.e. “if this one has died,” abl. abs. is conditional in force, mortuus is pf. dep. pple morior, “having died,” or can be translated as a simple adj., ‘dead’  
**sī quī ex reliquīs**: *if (anyone) who out of the rest...*; missing antecedent is subj. of succēdit  
**dignitāte**: *in dignity*; abl. of respect, governed by excellit not by succēdit  
2 **plūrēs**: *more*; nom. subj., parēs is nom. pred.  
**nōnumquam etiam**: (*and*) *sometimes even*; suffrāgiō and armīs are parallel, abl. of means  
3 **certō...tempore**: abl. of time when  
**finibus**: *territory*  
4 **media**: *center*; nom. predicate, the gen. tōtius Galliae modifies media  
**habētur**: *is considered*; “is held,” quae regiō is subject, quae is a relative adjective  
6 **reperta (esse)**: *to have been invented*; pf. pass. inf. governed by exīstimātur  
**trāslāta esse**: pf. pass. inf. trānsferō  
**diligentius**: comparative adverb  
**plērūmque**: *frequently*  
**illō**: *to that place*; adverb  
**discendī causā**: *for the sake of learning*; causā governs a preceding gen.; gerund gen. sg.  
9 **cōnsu(ē)vērunt**: *are accustomed*; present sense  
**ūnā**: *together*; adverb  
10 **pendunt**: *pay*; “weigh out”  
11 **suā sponte**: *by their own will*  
12 **versuum**: *of verses*; gen. pl.  
13 **annōs...vicēnōs**: *for twenty years*; duration  
**nōnnullī**: *several*; “not none”  
14 **fās esse**: *that it is right*; impersonal verb in ind. discourse, mandāre is subject of esse  
**ea**: *these (things)*; neut. pl., i.e. these teachings  
**litterīs**: *to letters (of the alphabet)*; i.e. writing  
**cum...ūtantur**: *although...*; this cum + pres.

subjunctive is concessive  
15 **id...īstituisse**: *to have established this*; i.e. not entrusting training to letters; pf. inf.  
**duābus dē causīs...quod**: *for two reasons...(namely) because*; as often, the adjective precedes the preposition; dat. and abl. pl. of duō is duābus/duōbus not duīs  
**mihi videntur**: *they seem to me*; “seem” is a common translation for the passive of videō  
16 **in vulgum**: *to the masses*  
**efferrī**: pass. inf., disciplīnam is acc. subj.  
**velint**: *they wish*; pres. subj. of vōlō; quod + subjunctive denotes an alleged, not real, cause  
17 **cōnfisōs**: *having trusted in* + dat; pf. dep. pple  
**minus...studēre**: *pay less attention to memory* “have less enthusiasm for memory” eōs is acc. subj., minus is a comparative adverb  
18 **plērīsque**: *to very many*; dat. of interest; -que does not decline, but plērūs- does  
**quod...accidit ut**: *because it happens...that*; accidit governs a noun result clause  
**praesidiō litterārū**: *with the assistance of (written) letters*; “with the protection of...”  
**in perdiscendō**: gerund abl. sg.  
19 **remittant**: *they weaken*; “they let go”  
**in primīs**: *in particular*; “among the first”  
**hoc...nōn interīre animās**: *this...(namely) that...*; neuter sg. acc. object of persuādere, animās is acc. subject in indirect discourse  
**ab aliīs...ad aliōs**: *from some...into others*  
20 **transīre**: animās is still acc. subject  
**hōc**: *because of this*; i.e. the reincarnation of souls, abl. of cause  
21 **excitārī**: *that (people) are roused*; add hominēs as acc. subject  
**metū...neglēctō**: abl. abs.  
**Multa**: *many (things)*; neut. pl. acc. d.o.

15.1 Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum 1  
incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, ut aut  
ipsi inīuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, 2.  
atque eōrum ut quisque est genere copīisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum 5  
sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiām potentiāque nōvērunt.

16.1 Nātiō est omnīs Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, 2. atque ob  
eam causam, quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs  
periculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē 10  
immolātūrōs vovent administrīsque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus ūtuntur, quod,  
prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, 3. nōn posse deōrum  
immortālium nūmen placārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent  
īnstitūta sacrificia. Alī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, 4. quōrum  
contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succensīs,  
circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. 5. Supplicia eōrum quī in furtō 15  
aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalibus  
esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium  
supplicia dēscendunt.

17.1 Deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra:  
hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum  
ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercatūrāsque habēre vim maximam 20  
arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam.

**adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** afflict, affect, 3  
**administer, -strī m.:** performer, 1  
**admodum:** completely, quite; just about, 2  
**ambactus, -ī m.:** vassal, 1  
**amplus, -a, -um:** ample, full, spacious, 2  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Apollo, Apollinis m.:** Apollo, 2  
**ars, artis f.:** art, 1  
**circum:** around, round about, 2  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum:** till, farm; worship, 1  
**comprehendō, -ere, -dī:** seize, arrest; grasp 4  
**contegō, -ere, -textī, -tectum:** to cover over, 1  
**dēscendō, -ere, ī, ēnsus:** descend; sink to; stoop to, 1  
**dēditus, -a, -um:** given to, devoted to, 1  
**deficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out, 3  
**deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 4  
**dux, ducis m./f.:** leader, guide, chief, 4  
**exanimō (1):** deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2  
**flamma, ae f.:** flame, 3  
**furtum, -ī n.:** theft, robbery, deceit, 1  
**grātia, -ae f.:** gratitude; favor, thanks, 2  
**grātus, -a, -um:** pleasing; grateful, 1

**immānis, -e:** immense, enormous, 1  
**immolō (1):** to sacrifice, immolate, 3  
**immortālis, -e:** immortal, 3  
**incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum:** happen, fall in with, 1  
**inīuria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 4  
**innocens, innocentis f.:** harmless, blameless, 1  
**institūō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set, establish, 2  
**inventor, -ōris m.:** inventor, 1  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 2  
**latrōcinium, -ī n.:** banditry, robbery, 1  
**Mars, Martis m.:** Mars, god of victory, 2  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 1  
**mercātūra, -ae f.:** trade, traffic, 1  
**Mercurius, -ī m.:** Mercury, 1  
**Minerva, -ae f.:** Minerva, 2  
**morbū, -ī m.:** disease, sickness, illness, 2  
**nātiō, natiōnis f.:** nation, people, tribe, 1  
**noscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum:** to learn, 1  
**noxia, -ae f.:** fault, offence, crime, 1  
**nūmen, -minis n.:** divine spirit or consent 1  
**pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 3  
**placō (1):** soothe, calm, appease, placate, 1  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 4

**potentia, -ae f.:** power, might, strength, 1  
**prōpellō, -ere, -pellī, -pulsum:** drive forward  
or push away, 3  
**quaestus, -ūs m.:** gain, profit, advantage, 1  
**quotannis:** every year, year by year, 1  
**reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** give back, return, 2  
**religiō, religiōnis f.:** superstitious rites, ritual,  
divine manifestation, 3  
**sacrificium, -ī n.:** sacrifice, 4  
**simulācrum, -ī n.:** likeness, image, 2

**soleō, -ēre, -itus sum:** be accustomed, 1  
**succendō, -ere, -dī, censum:** kindle under, 2  
**supplicium, -ī n.:** punishment, 3  
**versor (1):** be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3  
**via, -ae, f.:** road, way, path, 2  
**victima, -ae f.:** animal for sacrifice, victim, 1  
**vīmen, vīminis n.:** twig, wicker, withe, 1  
**vis, vis, f., pl. virēs:** force, power, violence, 4  
**vīvus, -a, -um:** living, alive, 2  
**vovēō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum:** vow; pray 1

- 1 **alterum genus:** *the other kind;* In 13.3 Caesar distinguished two groups, Druids and Knights. Here Caesar addresses the latter group.  
**equitum:** *of knights*  
**Hī:** *these;* i.e. the knights  
**cum est ūsus:** *when there is a need;* “is a use”  
2 **incidit:** *occurs, happens*  
**quod:** *which*  
**utī...inferrent...prōpulsārent:** *(namely) that...;* utī is an alternative to ut; noun result clause in apposition to quod with impf. subjunctives (secondary sequence) governed by accīdere  
3 **ipsī:** *they themselves;* i.e. the knights  
**illātās:** *carried on;* PPP inferō, supply inīuriās  
4 **eōrum ut quisque...ita:** *in the proportion as each one of them is...so...;* in other words “the more...the more,” ut and ita are correlatives  
**genere copīisque:** *in birth and...;* abl. respect  
**amplissimus:** *very distinguished*  
5 **hanc...grātiām:** *this lone (form) of influence*  
**nōvērunt:** *they have come to learn;* or “they know;” pf. noscō  
6 **dēdita:** *devoted to;* governs a dative plural  
**ob eam causam:** *for this reason*  
7 **quī:** *(those) who...;*  
**sunt adfectī:** pf. passive adficiō, + abl. means  
**quīque:** *and (those) who...;* second parallel clause parallel to the first  
8 **prō victimīs:** *instead of sacrificial animals*  
**immolātūrōs (esse):** *will sacrifice (them);* fut. inf., sē is acc. subj.; governed by vovent  
9 **administrīs...Druidibus:** *Druids as performers;* abl. obj. of ūtuntur  
**ad...for...;** expressing purpose

- quod:** *because*  
10 **prō vitā hominis:** *for the life of a man;* governed by the nisi...reddātur  
**posse...placārī:** numen is acc. subject  
**prō vitā hominis:** *for the life of a man;*  
11 **eiusdem generis:** *of the same sort;* gen. of quality  
12 **immānī magnitūdine:** *of immense size;* abl. of quality, immānis is an i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj.  
**simulācra:** *likeness;* Caesar describes image in the likeness of a man made of wicker  
13 **membra:** acc. direct object of complent  
**vivīs hominibus:** abl. of means  
**quibus succensīs:** *with these (images)...;* abl. abs. Caesar prefers to use a relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative  
14 **quī...sint comprehēnsī:** *who...have been caught;* pf. pass. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic  
15 **grātiōra:** *more pleasing;* acc. pred. with esse  
**dīs immortalibus:** *to the immortal gods;* an alternative form for dat. pl. deīs  
16 **eius generis cōpia:** *supply of this sort;* i.e. of criminals  
17 **Huius:** *of this one;* i.e. Mercury, gen. sg.  
18 **ferunt:** *they call this one the inventor...;* governs a double accusative, inventōrem is in the predicative position  
**hunc...ducem:** *they call this one the guide...;*  
19 **hunc...habēre:** *that this one...;* ind. discourse governed by arbitrantur  
**vim maximam:** *the greatest influence*  
20 **Apollinem...Minervam:** supply colunt

	<b>volō, velle, voluī:</b> to wish: Regular 3 <sup>rd</sup> Conj. except the infinitive, present indicative and present subjunctive			
pres.	vult <i>she wishes</i>	present indicative	volō	volumus
impf.	volēbat <i>she was wishing</i>		velim	velimus
fut.	volet <i>she will wish</i>		velis	velitis
perf.	voluit <i>she wished</i>		vult	vultis <sup>1</sup>
plupf.	volerat <i>she had wished</i>		volunt <sup>2</sup>	velint <sup>3</sup>
fut. pf.	volerit <i>she will have wished</i>		volent <sup>4</sup>	vellent <sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>p. 14, 46    <sup>2</sup>p. 28    <sup>3</sup>p. 52    <sup>4</sup>p. 28, 42, 58, 60    <sup>5</sup>p. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62

17.2. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opiniōnem: 1  
 Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia  
 trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Martem bella regere. 3. Huic,  
 cum proeliō dīmicare constituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērūmque  
 dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animalia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in 5  
 ūnum locum cōferunt. 4. Multīs in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs  
 tumulōs locīs consecrātīs conspicārī licet; 5. neque saepe accidit ut neglētā  
 quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet,  
 gravissimumque eī rēi supplicium cum cruciātū constitūtum est.

18.1 Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab Druidibus 10  
 prōditum dīcunt. 2. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō  
 diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsuram et annōrum initia sic  
 observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. 3. In reliquīs vītāe institūtīs hōc ferē ab  
 reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus militīae  
 sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire non patiuntur filiumque puerilī aetate in 15  
 publicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2  
 adolescō, -ere, adolēvi: to grow up, 1  
 adsistō, -ere, adstīti: stand by, set near, 1  
 aetās, aetātis f.: age, time, lifetime, 1  
 animal, animalis n.: animal, 2  
 Apollo, Apollinis m.: Apollo, 2  
 artificium, -ī m.: work, craft, work of art, 1  
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4  
 caelestis, -e: celestial, heavenly; subs. gods, 1  
 cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring together, gather, 2  
 conficiō, -ere: to exhaust, finish, 4  
 consecrō (1): dedicate to a god, make holy 2  
 conspectus, -ūs, m.: look, sight, view, 2  
 conspiciō, -ārī: catch sight of, perceive, 1  
 cruciātus, -ūs m.: torture, torment, 2  
 dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus: drive out, 1  
 dēvovent, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum: vow, sacrifice, 1  
 differō, -ferre, distulī: differ, be different, 2  
 dīmicō (1): brandish weapons; contend, 1  
 Dis, Dītis, -ī m.: Dis, Pluto, 1  
 exstruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum: build up, 1  
 finiō, -īre: to end, limit, bound, 1  
 gens, gentis, f.: people, tribe, nation, 1  
 immolō (1): to sacrifice, immolate, 3  
 institūm, -ī n.: institution, practice, custom, 2  
 Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 2  
 liberī, -ōrum m.: children 2  
 Mars, Martis m.: Mars, god of victory, 2  
 mensis, -is m.: month, 2  
 militia, -ae f.: military service; military, 2

Minerva, -ae f.: Minerva, 2  
 morbus, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 2  
 mūnus, -eris n.: service, duty; tax, gift, 1  
 nātālis, -e: natal, of birth, 1  
 neglegō, ere, -lēxi, neglētum: to neglect, 3  
 observō (1): watch, observe, attend to, 2  
 occultō (1): hide, conceal, 3  
 opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 2  
 opiniō, -niōnis f.: opinion, thought, belief, 2  
 palam: openly, publicly, 2  
 pater, patris, m.: father, 4  
 patior, -i, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 2  
 praedicō (1): proclaim, publish, declare, 2  
 prōdō, ere, didī, dītum: bring forth; betray 2  
 prōgnātus, -a, -um: born, sprung from, 1  
 puerilis, -e: youthful, childish; silly, 1  
 quispiam, quae-, quod-: anyone, anything (adj. any), 2  
 regō, -ere, rēxi, rectum: rule, lead, direct, 1  
 religiō, religiōnis f.: superstitious rites, ritual,  
 divine manifestation, 3  
 saepe: often, 3  
 sic: thus, in this way, 3  
 spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4  
 supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, 3  
 tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 2  
 trādō, -dere, -didī, -dītum: to give over,  
 hand down, pass down, 3  
 tumulus, -ī m.: pile, heap, mound, hill, 1  
 turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful, 2

- 1 Dē hīs: concerning these; i.e. Apollo, Minerva, Juno, Jupiter  
 eandem...quam reliquae gentēs: the same... as the rest of the people (have); "the same... which the rest of the people (have)," eandem modifies opiniōnem  
 2 Apollinem...Minervam...Iovem...Martem: that Apollo...(and) that Minerva...(and) that Jupiter...(and) that Mars...; acc. subjects of ind. discourse in apposition to opiniōnem; asyndeton, supply conjunctions  
 3 huic: to this one; i.e. Mars  
 4 cum proeliō: when...in battle; cum is adverbial  
 ea quae...cēperint: those things which...; ea is neuter pl. object of dēvovent; cēperint is pf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic  
 5 cum superāvērunt: when they have overcome (an enemy)  
 6 multīs: modifies civitatibus; placing the adj. before the preposition emphasizes the role of the adjective  
 hārum rērum: of these things; modifies tumulōs  
 7 locis consecrātis: in...; abl. place where  
 ut quispiam...auderet: that anyone...dare to; noun result clause, impf. subjunctive audeō which governs complementary infinitives  
 neglētā...religiōne: with religious observe...; ablative absolute  
 8 capta: things seized; PPP capiō in neuter pl., i.e. the rēs in line 5  
 apud sē: in their home  
 posita tollere: to destroy things having be put aside; PPP pōnō, -ere in neuter pl.  
 9 eī rēi: for this matter; dat. sg.  
 10 sē...prōgnātōs (esse): that they were born; prōgnātōs is either an acc. predicate with missing inf. esse or part of a pf. passive inf. id...prōditum (esse): that this was brought forth...; pf. pass. inf. prōdō in ind. discourse  
 11 ob eam causam: for this reason  
 spatia omnis temporis: intervals of every (period of) time  
 12 noctium: i-stem gen. plural nox, noctis et mēnsuram (initia) et annōrum initia: and the beginnings of months and of years; acc. object of observant  
 sic...ut: in this way...so that; result clause  
 13 hōc...quod: in this...(namely) because; abl. of respect governed by differunt  
 suōs liberōs...adire: that their children...; acc. subj. of ind. discourse following patiuntur  
 14 mūnus militīae: military service; "service of the military"  
 15 nōn patiuntur: do not allow; 3<sup>rd</sup> pl. pres. patior  
 16 filiumque...adsistere (esse) turpe dūcunt: and they consider it is shameful that a son... stand...; supply (esse); the infinitive adsistere is subject of the missing esse and turpe is acc. predicate; all indirect discourse governed by dūcunt, filium is acc. subject of adsistere  
 puerilī aetate: of a boy's age; abl. of quality

#### Common Uses of the Ablative

construction	example	translation
Ablative Absolute	urbe captā	the city having been captured
Ablative of Means	stilō scribēns	writing with a stylus
Ablative of Agent	ā matre vocātur	he is called by his mother
Ablative of Separation (includes From Which)	timore liberātur	she is free from fear
Ablative of Manner	cum diligentiā	with diligence
Ablative of Accompaniment	cum amicis	with friends
Ablative of Place Where	in urbibus	in the cities
Ablative of Place From Which	ab marī	from the sea
Ablative of Time When	eō tempore	at that time
Ablative of Respect (Specification)	linguā differunt	differ in respect to language
Ablative of Quality (Description)	est animō bonō	is of good will
Ablative of Cause	gaudiō commōtus	moved by joy
Ablative of Comparison	clārior luce	brighter than light
Ablative of Degree of Difference	multō clārior	much brighter
w/ verbs: potior, utor, fungor, fruor, vescor	utī gladiō	to employ a sword
w/ adjectives: dignus, indignus	glōriā indignus	unworthy of glory

19.1 Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. 2. Huius omnis pecūniā coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servātur: uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. 3. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vītāe necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt. 4. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlectōs esse constābat, iustīs fūneribus cōfectīs unā cremābantur.

20.1 Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicā administrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, 2. quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsīs rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōsiliū capere cognitum est. 3. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant quaeque esse ex ūsū iūdicāverunt multītūdīnī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per cōnciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**aestimātiō, -tīonis f.:** valuation, assessment 1  
**animal, animalis n.:** animal, 2  
**bonus, -a, -um:** good, kind(ly), useful 2  
**cliens, -entis m.:** client, dependent, 4  
**commodus, -a, -um:** convenient, suitable, 2  
**communicō (1):** share, impart, 4  
**comperiō, -ire, -perī, -pertum:** find out, discover, 1  
**concedō, -ere:** go away, withdraw, yield, 2  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**coniunctim:** jointly, in common, 1  
**constō, -āre, -stīti:** stand together, 2  
**cor, cordis n.:** the heart, 1  
**cremō (1):** burn, consumer by fire, 2  
**cultus, -ūs m.:** culture, refinement, 2  
**dēcedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** depart, die, 4  
**diligō, -ere, -lecti, -lectum:** to love, esteem, 1  
**dōs, dotis f.:** dowry, gift, 2  
**excrucciō (1):** torture, torment, 1  
**facinus, facinoris n.:** deed; bad deed, crime 2  
**falsus, -a, -um:** wrong, mistaken, misled, 1  
**fāma, -ae f.:** rumor, story, hearsay, 2  
**fructus, -ūs m.:** profit, advantage, benefit, fruit, 2  
**fūnus, fūneris n.:** funeral, burial; death, 2  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 4

**illustris, -e:** bright, distinguished, 1  
**impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus:** drive, rouse 2  
**imperitus, a, um:** unskilled, inexperienced, 2  
**iūdicō (1):** judge, decide, assess, 2  
**iustus, -a, -um:** just, fair, 1  
**lēx, legis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 3  
**liberi, -ōrum m.:** children, 2  
**loquor, -ī, locūtum:** speak, say, 2  
**magistratus, -ūs m.:** magistrate, officer, 3  
**magnificus, -a, -um:** magnificent, splendid 1  
**memoria, -ae f.:** memory, 4  
**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 4  
**nascor, nascī, nātus sum:** be born, grow, 3  
**nēvē:** or not, and not, nor, 2  
**nex, necis f.:** death, violent death, murder, 1  
**nōmen, nōminis n.:** name, 2  
**occultō (1):** hide, conceal, 3  
**paterfamiliās, -ae m.:** paterfamilias, 1  
**pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 3  
**potestās, -tātis f.:** power, ability, capacity, 3  
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditum:** bring forth; betray 2  
**propinquus, -a, -um:** near, close; *subst.* kinsman, 2  
**quaesitiō, -tīōnis f.:** investigation, inquiry, 1  
**rūmor, rūmoris f., -ae f.:** rumor, hearsay, 2  
**saepe:** often, 3

**sacustus, -a, -um:** consecrated, hallowed, 1  
**servilis, -e:** slavish, servile, of a slave, 1  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 2  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 1  
**sicut:** just as, so as, as if, 2  
**sumptuosus, -a, -um:** sumptuous, expensive, 1  
**suprā:** above, over, on the top, 3  
**suspiciō, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4

**temerarius, -a, -um:** rash, inconsiderate, 1  
**terreō, -ēre, terrū, territum:** to terrify, 2  
**tormentum, -ī n.:** missile-launcher, torture, 3  
**uter, utra, utrum:** each or one (of two), 2  
**uxor, uxōris f.:** wife, spouse, 3  
**vir, virī m.:** man, 4  
**vīvus, -a, -um:** living, alive, 2

1 **Virī:** *husbands*; an appropriate translation in light of the discussion of wives, uxōrēs  
**quantās...tantās:** *as much money...so much*; correlatives; relative and demonstrative respectively  
**dōtis nōmine:** *in the name of a dowry*  
**ex suis...factā:** ablative absolute  
**commūnicant:** *contribute (an equal share)*; i.e. the husband makes a contribution matching the value of the dowry  
2 **huius omnis pecūniāe:** *of...;* objective gen. governed by ratiō  
3 **ratiō habētur:** *an account is made*; “is held”  
**fructūs:** *the profits*; nom., the word “usufruct” denotes a husband’s ability to enjoy the use and profits of a wife’s dowry as long as he does not diminish the original value of the dowry  
**uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum:** *which one of them has survived (the other) in life, to this one...;* abl. of respect; eum, though masculine, can apply to the surviving husband or wife  
4 **pars utrīusque:** *the portion of each one*; i.e. the dowry and the husband’s contribution  
**superiōrum:** *previous*; gen. pl. comparative  
5 **in uxōrēs...in liberōs:** *toward...toward*  
**sicutī:** alternative to sicut  
6 **paterfamiliae:** *the paterfamilias*; nom. subject  
**illūstriōre locō:** *in a more illustrious position*  
**nātus:** pf. passive pple. nascor  
**dēcessit:** *has died*; “departed,” a euphemism  
7 **dē morte:** *concerning death*; modifies rēs  
**in servilem modum:** *in the manner of slaves*; i.e. just as they investigate slaves after the death of a master, so a wife after the death of her husband  
8 **compertum est:** *it is discovered*; incriminating evidence  
**ignī:** i-stem abl. singular  
9 **prō cultū:** *according to the culture*  
10 **vīvīs cordī fuisse:** *to have been dear to the living*; cordī is a predicative dative commonly found with inf. of sum; vīvīs is dat. of interest

11 **paulō:** *a little*; abl. of degree of difference  
**suprā hanc memoriā:** *before our time*; “before this (living) memory”  
12 **constābat:** *it was agreed*; “it stood fixed”  
**ab eīs:** *by them*; i.e. by the dead  
**dīlectōs esse:** pf. pass. inf.  
**iūstīs fūneribus cōfectis:** *the due funerals completed*; abl. absolute  
**unā:** *together*; living burned with the dead  
13 **quae civitātēs...existimantur:** *the cities which they consider to...;*  
**commodius:** *more advantageously*; comparative adverb  
**habent lēgibus sānctum...utī...:** *have it ordained by laws...that*; utī (ut) introduces an indirect command with pres. subjunctive  
14 **sī quis quid...accēperit:** *if anyone has received anything...;* aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle “After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali’s go away” (in other words indefinite aliquid becomes just quid); accēperit is pf. subj.  
**ā finitimīs:** *from neighbors, from those near*  
15 **cum quō aliō:** *with anyone else*; see note 1. 15  
**quod:** *because*  
16 **hominēs...terrēri...impelli...capere:** *that people...;* inf. are subject of cognitum est  
17 **dē summīs rēbus:** *concerning the most important matters*  
**quae vīsa sunt:** *(those things) which seemed best (to hide)*  
**quaeque...iūdicāverunt:** *and (those things) which...;* missing antecedent is obj. of product  
**esse ex ūsū:** *is of use*; i.e. advantageous  
19 **multītūdīnī:** dat. indirect object  
**prōdunt:** *bring forth*; in contrast to occultant  
**loquī:** pres. deponent infinitive  
20 **concēditur:** *it is allowed*; “it is yielded”



24.1 Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae peractō, quod eō 1  
 annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitatēs angustius prōvēnerat, coactus  
 est aliter ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocāre legiōnēsque in  
 plūrēs civitatēs distribuere; 2. ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs ducendam Gaiō  
 Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervio Quintō Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs 5  
 Lucio Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum Titō Labiēnō in confinio Trēverōrum  
 hiemāre iussit. Trēs in Belgīs collocāvit: 3. eis Marcum Crassum quaestorem  
 et Lucium Munātium Plancum et Gaium Trebōnium lēgātōs praefecit. 4. Ūnam  
 legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs V in  
 Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub 10  
 imperiō Ambiorigis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. 5. Eīs milītibz Quintum  
 Titūrium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praesesse iussit.  
 6. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus, facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē  
 medērī posse exīstīmāvit. 7. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna  
 praeter eam, quam Lucio Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quietissimam partem 15  
 dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. 8. Ipse intereā,  
 quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī  
 cōstituit.

aliter: otherwise, 2  
 angustus, -a, -um: narrow, confined, 4  
 Aurunculeius, -ī m.: Aurunculeius, 2  
 Catuvolcus -ī m.: Catuvolcus, 2  
 centum: one hundred, 1  
 collocō (1): place together, arrange, set up, 4  
 confinium, -ī n.: a confine, limit, border, 1  
 conscribō, -ere, -scripsī: enlist, enroll, 2  
 distribuō, -ere, -buī, -būtum: divide up, 2  
 Esubiū, -ōrum m.: the Esubii, 1  
 Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 3  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um: full of grain, 2  
 Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 4  
 hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3  
 inopia, -ae f.: poverty, want (of), need, 1  
 intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 3  
 Marcus, -ī m.: Marcus, 1  
 medeor, -ērī: heal, cure; assist, alleviate (dat) 1  
 modus, -ī m.: manner, form; measure, 4  
 Morinī, -ōrum m.: Morini, 1  
 moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3  
 Mosa, -ae f.: Mosa (Meuse) river, 1  
 Munātius, -ī m.: Munatius, 1  
 muniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to fortify, build, 3

pācātus, -a, -um: peaceful, quiet, 1  
 Padus, -ī m.: Padus (Po) river, 1  
 peragō, -ere, ēgī, actum: pass, go through, 1  
 Plancus, -ī m.: Plancus, 2  
 plūs (plūris): more, 4  
 praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: set (acc) over (dat), put  
 (acc) in charge over (dat), 2  
 praesum, -esse, -fuī: be over, preside over (dat), 2  
 praeter: beyond, past (+ acc.), 2  
 prōveniō, -ire, -vēnī: come forward, grow 1  
 quaestor, -oris m.: quaestor, 3  
 quartus, -a, -um: the fourth, 2  
 quietus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed 1  
 quoad: until, as far as, as long as, 1  
 Rēmī, -ōrum m.: Rheims (town), 1  
 Roscius, -ī m.: Roscius, 2  
 Samarobrīva, -ae f.: Samarobriva (a town) 2  
 siccitās, -tātis f.: dryness, 1  
 subducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: draw up,, 2  
 Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4  
 trans; over, across (+ acc.), 3  
 Trebōnius, -ī m.: Trebonius, 1  
 Trēveri, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4

- 1 **Subductis nāvibus:** *the ships drawn up (on shore); sub- as a prefix often means “up from under,” the ships were driven onto the beach*  
**cōnciliō...peractō:** abl. absolute  
**Samarobrīvae:** at *Samarobriva*; locative case  
**quod:** because  
 2 **eō annō:** *on that...;* eō is demonstrative; abl. place where  
**angustius:** *more limited, scarcer;* “narrower,” i.e. less grain, comparative adj. neut. sg. with frūmentum the subject of prōvēnerat  
**coactus est:** *he was compelled;* pf. pass. cōgō  
 3 **aliter ac:** *otherwise than;* common translation of aliter with ac or atque  
**superiōribus:** *in previous...;* “higher” time when hibernis: *winter-quarters*  
 4 **plūrēs:** acc. pl. plūs; comparative of multus  
**ex quibus:** *from these;* “from which,” in a transition Caesar prefers a relative pronoun where English prefers a demonstrative  
**ūnam:** *one (legion)*  
**in Morinōs:** *among the Morini*  
**ducendam:** *to be led;* “going to be led,” gerundive expressing purpose modifying ūnam and governing “in Morinōs”  
**Gaiō Fabiō...Rōsciō:** dative indirect object  
 5 **dedit:** pf. dō, dare  
**alteram...tertiam:** *another (legion)...a third (legion)...;* parallel to “ūnam...dedit,” supply to each clause “ducendam” and “dedit” which are missing through ellipsis (omission)  
 6 **quartam:** *the fourth (legion)*  
 7 **Trēs:** *three (legions)*

- eīs:** *over them;* dat. with compound praefecit  
 8 **praefecit:** *put (acc) in charge of (dat)*  
 9 **proximē:** *very recently;* “nearest (in time) superlative adverb  
 10 **quōrum:** *of which;* partitive genitive  
 11 **Eīs:** *over them;* dat. with compound praesesse  
 12 **Quintum...legātōs:** acc. subject of praesesse  
 13 **Ad hunc modum:** *in this manner;* “according to this manner” part of the ablative absolute distribūtis legiōnibus  
**inopiae...medērī:** *to alleviate the need;* dat. object of dep. medeor  
**sēsē:** *that he...;* reflexive acc. subject of posse  
 15 **praeter eam, quam:** *except that (legion) which...;*  
**Lucio Rōsciō:** dat. i.o. of dederat, plpf. dō  
**In...partem:** *into...part (of Gallia)*  
**pācātissimam, quietissimam:** superlatives  
 16 **ducendum:** *to be led;* “going to be led,” gerundive expressing purpose modifying quam (legiōnem) and governing “in...partem”  
**milibus...centum:** *by 100 miles;* “by 100 thousand of paces”  
**continēbantur:** hiberna is the neut. pl. subject  
 17 **quoad...cōgnōvisset:** *until he had learned;* plpf. subjunctive; i.e. he delayed in Gaul until he had learned all had been arranged  
**legiōnēs collocātās (esse):** *that the legions...;* ind. discourse, supply esse for pf. pass. inf.  
**hiberna mūnīta (esse):** *that winter-quarters;* ind. discourse, supply esse for pf. pass. inf.  
**morārī:** present deponent inf. moror

#### Command in the Winter-Quarters

The highest officer in the Roman Army was the **dux**, general. When a Roman dux won an important victory, he might be given the title **imperātor**, commander, by his own men. The officers who ranked immediately below the dux and were selected by him to lead a single legion were called **legātī**, a word that means “the commissioned” but is often translated as lieutenant-generals or more commonly legates. This word “legātus” is also used to describe envoys commissioned to convey information on behalf of the dux or senate, so readers should be careful to distinguish a legātus who leads a legion from a legātus who carries news, for example, from Caesar to his allies.

In the passage above, Caesar assigns a legion to each of a number of legātī who will play a role in the events that follow in Book V: **Gaius Fabius**, **Quintus Cicero**, brother of the famous orator, **Lucius Roscius**, **Titus Labienus**, **Lucius Munatius Plancus**, **Gaius Trebonius**, **Quintus Titūrius Sabinus** and **Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta**. In order to possess *imperium*, the power to command, these legates had to have been elected by the Centuriate Assembly in Rome at some point in the past to the office of praetor or consul. All the legates, therefore, were members of the senatorial class.

In addition to the legates, Caesar appointed a legion in winter-quarters to the **quaestor** Marcus Crassus, son of the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus. Elected by Rome’s Tribal Assembly, quaestors were financial officers. On a military campaign, a quaestor would be chosen by the dux from among the elected quaestors and was responsible for distributing soldiers’ pay and procuring supplies.

**Background:** Upon return from the second expedition to Britain, Caesar discovers that on account of drought the grain supply will be low for the winter. Since no one region can supply the grain for the army, Caesar distributes his forces into a number of smaller camps which, one assumes, can live off the grain in their particular region.

25.1 Erat in Carnūtibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius māiōrēs in suā 1  
civitate regnum obtinuerant. 2. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē  
benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus,  
maiōrum locum restituerat. 3. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimicī,  
multis palam ex civitate eius auctōribus, cum interfēcērunt. 4. Defertur ea rēs 5  
ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitās eōrum impulsū  
dēficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnūtēs  
proficiscī iubet ibique hiemāre quōrumque operā cognōverat Tasgetium  
interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. 5. Interim ab omnibus lēgātīs  
quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hiberna 10  
perventum locumque hibernis esse mūnītum.

26.1 Diēbus circiter XV, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī  
tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; 2. quī, cum ad  
finēs regnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna  
comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī, suōs concitāvērunt 15  
subitōque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum  
vērērunt. 3. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent  
atque ūnā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis equestri proeliō superiōrēs  
fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnatiōne redūxērunt.

ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 2  
auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4  
Belgium -ī n.: Belgium (part of Belgae), 2  
benevolentia, -ae, f.: goodwill, kindness, 1  
Carnūtēs, -um: Carnutes, 4  
Catuvolcus -ī m.: Catuvolcus, 2  
comportō (1): carry together, collect, 3  
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4  
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 2  
dēfectio, -tiōnis f.: rebellion, defection, 1  
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out, 3  
dēspērō (1): to have no hope, give up, 2  
ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum: send away 1  
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 1  
hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3  
Hispāni, -ōrum m.: Spaniard, 1  
iam: now, already, soon, 4  
impellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus: drive, rouse 2  
impulsus, -ūs m.: incitement, pressure, 1  
Indūtiomārus, -ī m.: (chief of Treveri), 1  
inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4  
lignātor, -ōris m.: wood-cutter, 1

muniō, -īre, -ivi, -itum: to fortify, build, 3  
nascor, nascī, nātus sum: be born, grow, 3  
opera, operae f.: service, hard work, effort, 3  
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: crush,  
burden, overwhelm, 3  
orior, -īrī, ortus: arise, rise, spring, 3  
palam: openly, publicly, 2  
Plancus, -ī m.: Plancus, 2  
plūs (plūris): more, 4  
praestō: at hand, present, at the service of (dat) 1  
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor, 3  
reducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus: to bring back, 3  
regnō (1): to reign, rule as a king, 1  
repentinus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4  
restituō, -ere, -stitui, -ductus: to restore, replace, 1  
singulāris, -e: single, individual, alone, 2  
Tasgetius, -ī m.: Tasgetius, 3  
trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditum: to give over,  
hand down, pass down, 3  
Trēverī, -ōrum m.: Treveri (Germanic), 4  
tumultus, -ūs m.: uproar, tumult, confusion, 1  
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **erat...nātus**: plpf. nascor  
**in Carnūtibus**: among the Carnutes  
**summō locō**: in the highest position; i.e. status, abl. of quality  
**cuius**: gen. sg. quī, quae, quod  
**māiōrēs**: ancestors; "greater (in birth)," comparative adj. of magnus, nom. subject  
**suā**: their; possessive reflexive adjective  
2 **Huic**: to this one; dat. i.o. of restituerat  
**prō virtūte...benevolentia**: (in return) for... eius: his; i.e. Tasgetius  
**in sē**: toward him; i.e. toward Caesar  
3 **singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus**: there had been a need for his singular service; ūsus est (here plpf.) just as opus est is idiomatic for "there is a need for" and governs an ablative, singulārī is i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. abl. with operā, which is 1<sup>st</sup> decl. and not from opus, operis  
4 **māiōrum**: of his ancestors; see line 1  
**Tertium...annum**: for...; acc. of duration  
**inimicī**: nom. pl. subject  
5 **multis palam...auctōribus**: many openly (being) promoters...; abl. absolute, subject and pred., supply the missing pple "being"  
**ea**: this; demonstrative adj. with fem. sg. rēs  
6 **veritus**: having begun to fear; inceptive pf. dep. pple vereor  
**quod...pertinēbat**: because...; i.e. the murder was not limited to one murderer but many  
**nē...dēficeret**: that...; nē is translated positively in this clause of fearing; impf. subj. in secondary seq. governed by veritus  
7 **impulsū**: because of their incitement; "by the incitement" abl. of cause  
**Lucium Plancum**: acc. subject of proficiscī, hiemāre, and mittere, all governed by iubet  
8 **quōrumque operā...hōs**: and these by whose effort...; the antecedent of the relative clause quōrum...interfectum comes after the clause; operā, as in line 3, is 1<sup>st</sup> decl. abl. sg.  
9 **interfectum (esse)**: pf. pass. inf. in indirect disc. with Tasgetium as acc. subject  
**comprehēnsōs**: arrested  
10 **certior factus est**: he was informed; "he was made more certain," a common idiom, certior is a comparative adjective, predicate nom.; this construction governs indirect discourse  
10 **perventum (esse)**: that they had arrived; this pf. passive infinitive in ind. disc is impersonal: "it has been arrived (by them)..." with the legates and quaestor as assumed agents; in translation, translate the pf. pass. as pf. active  
11 **locum...mūnītum esse**: that their positions were fortified; plural, though each legate may have informed Caesar about his single position, there were collectively many different winter-camps set up  
**hibernis**: for winter-quarters; dat. of purpose  
12 **Diēbus...XV**: within...; abl. of time within  
**quibus**: in which (days); abl. of time within  
**ventum est**: they came; "it has been come," impersonal passive  
**repentinī...dēfectiōnis**: subjective gen. of initium, which is nom. subj.  
13 **ortum est**: pf. deponent orior  
**ab**: from...; abl. of origin, not abl. of agent  
14 **regnī suī**: of their kingdom; gen. sg.  
**praestō fuissent**: had been at hand for; + dat. praestō is an adv. commonly found with a form of sum, here plpf. subj. in a cum-clause  
15 **Indūtiomārī Trēverī**: of Indutiomarus, one of the Treveri; "of the Treverian Indutiomarus," both are gen. sg. modifying abl. pl. nuntiīs  
**impulsī**: having been incited; nom. pl. modifies quī and governs preceding 3 words  
**suōs**: their own (men)  
16 **subitō...lignātōribus**: abl. abs.  
**magnā manū**: with a large body (of men); abl. of means  
**oppugnātum**: to assault; "to capture by assault," supine in acc. sg. expresses purpose and may be translated as an infinitive  
17 **nostrī**: our (men)  
**cēpissent**: plpf. subj. capiō  
18 **ūnā ex parte**: on one side; "from one side"  
**Hispānis...ēmissis**: abl. absolute  
**equestri proeliō**: in an equestrian battle; i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adjective in abl. sg.  
**superiōrēs**: nom. pred. of plpf. subj. of sum  
19 **dēspērātā rē**: abl. absolute  
**hostēs**: nom. subj.  
**suōs**: their (men)  
**ab**: from...; abl. of separation

#### Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

Caesar commonly calls the first legate by the cognomen **Sabīnus** (line 14) or nomen **Titūrius**. Keep in mind that these names identify one and the same person. In V.27.1, the same legatus is called Quintus Titūrius. Caesar identifies the second legate, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, almost always by the cognomen **Cotta**.

26.4 Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium 1  
prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus  
contrōversīās minūī posse spērārent.

27.1 Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā Gaius Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, 5  
familiāris Quintī Titūrī, et Quintus Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante  
missū Caesaris ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad  
hunc modum locūtus est: 2. sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī  
cōnfītērī debēre, quod eius operā sfpēndiō liberātus esset, quod Aduatucīs,  
fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et filius et fratris filius ab  
Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in 10  
servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; 3. neque id, quod fēcerit de oppugnātiōne  
castrōrum, aut iūdicīō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coactū civitātis, suaque  
esse eiusmodī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multītūdō quam ipse  
in multītūdīnem. 4. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repēntīnae  
Gallōrum conīūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā 15  
probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum ut suīs copiīs populum  
Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. 5. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium:  
omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō  
alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset; 6. nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre  
potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsilium 20  
initum vidērētur.

**adeō:** to such a degree, such an extent, so, 1  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**Arpineius, -ī m.:** Arpineius, 2  
**beneficium, -ī n.:** favor, benefit, kindness, 2  
**catena, -ae f.:** chain, fetter, shackle, 1  
**coactus, -ūs m.:** compulsion, coercion, 1  
**colloquium, -īī n.:** conversation, talk, 1  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**conclamō (1):** cry out together, shout, 2  
**confidō, -ere, confisus sum:** trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**confiteor, -ēri, -fessum:** admit, reveal, 1  
**coniūratiō, -ōnis f.:** pact, union, conspiracy 3  
**dēbeō, -ēre, debūi, debitum:** ought, owe 1  
**eiusmodī:** of this kind, such; so, 3  
**familiāris, -e:** of the family; close friend, 1  
**frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 2  
**Gaius, -ī m.:** Gaius, 4  
**Hispania, -ae f.:** Spain, 2  
**humilitās, -tātis f.:** weakness, lowliness, 1  
**iam:** now, already, soon, 4  
**imperītus, a, um:** unskilled, inexperienced (gen), 2  
**iudicium, -ī n.:** decision, judgment; trial, 3  
**Iūnius, -ī m.:** Junius, 2

**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 2  
**liberō (1):** free, liberate, 3  
**libertās, -tātis f.:** freedom, liberation, 2  
**loquor, -ī, locūtum:** speak, say, 2  
**minuō, -ere, minuī:** diminish, ebb, 2  
**missus, -ūs m.:** a sending, launching, 1  
**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 4  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 4  
**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, 2  
**opera, operae f.:** service, hard work, effort, 3  
**pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum:** pay, weigh 2  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 4  
**porrō:** furthermore, further; long ago, far back, 1  
**praesertim:** especially, particularly, 2  
**prōdeō, -ire, -ī, -itum:** advance, go forth, 1  
**quīdam, quaedam, quiddam:** a certain, 4  
**recuperō (1):** gain again, regain, recover, 1  
**remittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** send back, 4  
**repēntinus, -a, -um:** sudden, unexpected, 4  
**servitūs, servitūtis, f.:** servitude, 2  
**stipendium, -īī n.:** payment, tribute; military service, 1  
**ventitō (1):** to come often, resort to, 2  
**voluntās, -tātis f.:** will, wish, choice, 2

- 1 **suō mōre:** according to their custom; cf. I.4.1  
**utī aliquī...prōdīret:** that someone go forth; ut + impf. subj. prōdeō in an ind. command; aliquī is a nom. sg. indefinite adj., alternate to aliquis  
**nostrīs:** our (men)  
**ad:** for...; expressing purpose
- 2 **habēre sēsē:** (and) that they had...; either ind. discourse governed by conclāmāvērunt just as the ind. command or governed by a missing verb of speech: "(stating) that they had"  
**quae...vellent:** (things) which they wanted; impf. subj. volō in a subordinate clause in ind. disc.; the missing antecedent is obj. of habēre  
**dē rē commūnī:** about their common interests; "about common affairs"  
**quibus rēbus:** by which things; abl. of means
- 3 **contrōversīās:** acc. subject of inf. posse  
**minuī:** pres. passive inf.  
**spērārent:** impf. subj., same as vellent above
- 4 **colloquendī:** of discussing; gerund. gen. obj. of causā  
**eques:** in apposition to Arpineius; Arpineius was an equestrian in rank, the term "eques" refers to his rank in society rather than his occupation as a horseman
- 5 **familiāris:** a close friend; nom. appositive  
**iam ante:** already before
- 6 **missū:** at Caesar's sending; "by the sending of Caesar," Caesar is a subjective gen.; abl. cause  
**ventitāre:** to come often; frequentative of veniō  
**apud quōs:** among these; i.e. to these men; English prefers a demonstrative to the relative  
**ad hunc modum:** in this manner; "according to this manner"
- 7 **locūtus est:** pf. deponent, loquor  
**sēsē...cōnfītērī debēre:** that he confessed to owe; not "ought to confess," cōnfītērī is a dep. inf. in ind. discourse that extends at length through quod-clauses to tenuissent; in ind. disc. subordinate verbs not already subjunctive are made subjunctive  
**prō...beneficiīs:** (in return) for...; prō + abl.  
**plūrimum eī:** acc. object and dat. i.o. of debēre
- 8 **quod...liberātus esset:** because...; plpf. subj. Ambiorix lists the reasons he is indebted to Caesar; the verbs are subj. because subordinate verbs in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive  
**stipēndiō:** from...; abl. of separation  
**quod...cōnsue(vi)ssset:** which he had been accustomed; plpf. subj., subordinate verb in ind. disc.; the antecedent is neuter stipēndiō
- 9 **quodque...remissī essent:** and because...; plpf. pass. subj., remittō, subordinate verbs in ind. discourse become subjunctive  
**eī:** to him; i.e. to Ambiorix, dat. indirect object
- 10 **quōs...tenuissent:** whom...; relative clause of characteristic, here with plpf. subj. teneō  
**obsidum numerō:** in a group of hostages; abl. place where or accompaniment  
**apud sē:** among them; i.e. among the Aduatuci
- 11 **neque id...fēcisse:** and that (he) had not done it; ind. discourse parallel to cōnfītērī in l. 8, reflexive sēsē in l. 7 is acc. subject; "id" is acc. d.o. and refers to Ambiorix's assault  
**quod fēcērīt:** which...; relative clause of characteristic with perfect subj. faciō
- 12 **iūdicīō (suō), voluntāte suā:** abl. cause  
**coactū civitātis:** by the compulsion of the state; abl. of cause  
**suaque...imperia, ut:** and that his powers were of such a kind that...; a result clause with impf. subj. in secondary sequence follows
- 13 **nōn minus...iūris...quam ipse:** no less (of) authority...than he himself (had); minus is comparative adj. neut. acc. d.o., iūris is a partitive gen.; supply habēret after ipse  
**in:** over
- 14 **cīvitātī...hanc fuisse...:** that to the state this...; ind. discourse, hanc is acc. subj. with pf. inf. of sum; cīvitātī is a dat. of reference, i.e. from the viewpoint of the state  
**quod...potuerīt:** (namely) because...; pf. subj. of possum, subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in ind. discourse; the verb in direct disc. is subjunctive for alleged cause, the subject of potuerīt is a missing civitās
- 15 **conīūrātiōnī:** dat. obj. of resistere  
**Id sē...posse:** that he is able...; ind. disc., id is acc. d.o. of probāre, sē is acc. subject  
**facile:** adverb of 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. facilis, facile
- 16 **quod...rērum:** because...  
**sit:** he is; Ambiorix is nom. subject  
**ut...cōnfīdat:** that...; result clause, pres. subj.  
**suīs copiīs:** abl. means; Ambiorix's troops  
**populum Rōmānum:** acc. subject of posse
- 17 **sed esse:** but that it is...;
- 18 **omnibus...oppugnandīs:** for assaulting...; dat. purpose, employ a gerund-gerundive flip  
**dictum diem:** the appointed day; PPP dīcō  
**nē...posset:** lest any legion...; purpose clause
- 19 **alterae legiōnī subsidiō:** double dative (dat. of interest and dat. of purpose respectively)
- 20 **Gallōs...potuisse:** Gauls could not deny Gauls
- 20 **cum...vidērētur:** since...seemed
- 20 **dē recuperandā...:** gerund-gerundive flip
- 21 **initum (esse):** to have been entered; pf. inf.

27.7 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habere nunc sē ratiōnem officī 1  
 prō beneficiis Caesaris: monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio, ut suae ac  
 militum salutē cōsulat. 8. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam  
 Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore bīduō. 9. Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū velintne  
 priusquam finitimī sentiant ēductōs ex hibernis militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut 5  
 ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quinquaginta,  
 alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. 10. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iurandō cōfirmāre  
 tūtum iter per finēs datūrum; 11. quod cum faciat, et cīvitatī sēsē cōsulere,  
 quod hibernis levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātam referre. Hāc  
 orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix. 10

28.1 Arpinēus et Iūnius, quae audierunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentinā  
 rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda  
 exīstimābant maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitatē ignōbilem  
 atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam  
 vix erat crēdendum. 2. Itaque ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt magnaue inter eōs  
 existit contrōversia. 3. Lucius Aurunculēus complūrēsque tribūnī militum et  
 prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernis  
 iniussū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant: quantāsvīs magnās etiam cōpiās  
 Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hibernis docēbant: rem esse testimōniō,  
 quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē 20  
 sustinuerint: rē frumentāriā non premī; intereā et ex proximīs hibernis et ā  
 Caesare conventūra subsidia: postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam,  
 auctōre hoste, dē summīs rēbus capere cōsiliū?

adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist, (dat.), 3  
 agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4  
 amplus, -a, -um: ample, full, spacious, 2  
 Arpineius, -ī m.: Arpineius, 2  
 auctor, auctoris m.: agent, doer, cause, 4  
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4  
 audiō, -īre, -īvī, auditum: to hear, listen to, 1  
 Aurunculeius, -ī m.: Aurunculeius, 2  
 beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness, 2  
 biduum, -ī n.: a period of two days, 2  
 centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4  
 conducō, -ere: bring together, gather, 2  
 cōsulō, -ere, -sulū, sultum: consult, consider, 3  
 credō, -ere, -didī, creditum: believe, trust 1  
 dēducō, -ere: lead or draw down or away, 3  
 discō, -ere, -didicī: learn, get to know, 2  
 doceō, -ere, -uī, -ctus: teach, tell, 4  
 ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus: lead out, 3  
 existō, -ere, -stīfī, -stītum: arise, appear, 1  
 frumentarius, -a, -um: full of grain, 2  
 grātia, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks, 2

hospitium, -ī n.: hospitality; guest-host tie, 1  
 humilis, -e: on the ground, low; humble, 1  
 ignobilis, -e: ignoble, obscure, unknown, 1  
 impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 7  
 iniussū: without orders, 1  
 intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 3  
 Iūnius, -ī m.: Junius, 2  
 ius iurandum, iuris iurandi n.: sworn oath, 2  
 levis, -e: light, not heavy; unimportant, 1  
 levō (I): lift up, relieve; make smooth, 1  
 meritum, -ī n.: service, merit, favor, 1  
 moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: to warn, advise, 2  
 muniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum: to fortify, build, 3  
 -ne: whether (opens yes/no question), 1  
 neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, neglēctum: to neglect, 3  
 nunc: now, at present, 2  
 officium, -ī, n.: duty, obligation, 3  
 orō (I): plead, pray (for), entreat, 2  
 pietās, -tātis f.: piety, devotion, 1  
 polliceor, -cērī, -cītus: promise, offer, 2  
 postremō, -ī: at last, finally: abl. as adv. 2

priusquam: before, earlier than, 1  
 quantusvis, -avis, -umvis: however much, 1  
 quinquaginta: fifty, 1  
 quoniam: since, inasmuch as, seeing that, 1  
 referō, ferre, tulī, lātum: report, bring back, 3  
 repentinus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4  
 satisfaciō, -ere, fecī, factum: to do enough 1  
 sentiō, -īre, -sī, sēnsus: to realize, feel, 3

sponte: willingly, voluntarily, 2  
 temere: heedlessly, blindly, without cause, 1  
 testimonium, -ī n.: witness, testimony, 1  
 tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, officer, 2  
 turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful, 2  
 ultrō: voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3  
 vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 2  
 vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 3

1 quibus...satisfecerit: Since he accomplished enough for these; pf. subjunctive satisfaciō, use a demonstrative instead of relative pronoun  
 2 prō pietate: out of devotion; i.e. patriotism  
 3 salutē: for his own and the soldiers' safety; dat. of purpose, suae a possessive adj. agreeing with salutē while militum is a gen. plural  
 4 trānsisse: pf. inf. trānsēō in ind. discourse  
 5 priusquam...sentiant: i.e. before the Gauls find out  
 6 dēducere: complementary inf. of velint  
 7 paulō: a little; "by a little," abl. of degree of difference with comparative adv. of amplius  
 8 quod: this; i.e. removing Titūrius' troops and advising Titūrius on flight; translate the relative as a demonstrative, acc. object of faciat  
 9 et cīvitatī sēsē cōsulere: both that he was consulting the state; cīvitatī is dat. obj.  
 10 illud: the things (which); or "what," the missing antecedent is obj. of dēferunt  
 11 et...referre: and he returned...; Ambiorix is able to be loyal to the Gauls and to Caesar  
 12 (ea) nōn neglegenda (esse): that they must not be neglected; passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum); supply esse to form the infinitive  
 13 suā sponte: by its own will  
 14 populō Rōmānō: (against) the Roman people  
 15 erat crēdendum: was to be believed; the subj. is "cīvitatē...ausam (esse);" passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) as in line 12  
 16 nihil...agendum (esse): passive periphrastic, see note for line 15 above  
 17 discēdendum (esse): that (they) must not depart; "it must not be departed," see line 12  
 18 rem esse testimōniō: that the matter served as evidence; "was for evidence" dat. of purpose  
 19 rem esse testimōniō: that the matter served as evidence; "was for evidence" dat. of purpose  
 20 cōsiliū: council; i.e. discussion in assembly  
 21 frumentāriā: by the grain supply; means  
 22 conventūra (esse): would convene; fut. inf.  
 23 turpius: more shameful than...; comparison  
 auctōre hoste: enemy being author; absolute  
 capere cōsiliū: to adopt a plan; idiom

1 quibus...satisfecerit: Since he accomplished enough for these; pf. subjunctive satisfaciō, use a demonstrative instead of relative pronoun  
 2 prō pietate: out of devotion; i.e. patriotism  
 3 salutē: for his own and the soldiers' safety; dat. of purpose, suae a possessive adj. agreeing with salutē while militum is a gen. plural  
 4 trānsisse: pf. inf. trānsēō in ind. discourse  
 5 priusquam...sentiant: i.e. before the Gauls find out  
 6 dēducere: complementary inf. of velint  
 7 paulō: a little; "by a little," abl. of degree of difference with comparative adv. of amplius  
 8 quod: this; i.e. removing Titūrius' troops and advising Titūrius on flight; translate the relative as a demonstrative, acc. object of faciat  
 9 et cīvitatī sēsē cōsulere: both that he was consulting the state; cīvitatī is dat. obj.  
 10 illud: the things (which); or "what," the missing antecedent is obj. of dēferunt  
 11 et...referre: and he returned...; Ambiorix is able to be loyal to the Gauls and to Caesar  
 12 (ea) nōn neglegenda (esse): that they must not be neglected; passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum); supply esse to form the infinitive  
 13 suā sponte: by its own will  
 14 populō Rōmānō: (against) the Roman people  
 15 erat crēdendum: was to be believed; the subj. is "cīvitatē...ausam (esse);" passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) as in line 12  
 16 nihil...agendum (esse): passive periphrastic, see note for line 15 above  
 17 discēdendum (esse): that (they) must not depart; "it must not be departed," see line 12  
 18 rem esse testimōniō: that the matter served as evidence; "was for evidence" dat. of purpose  
 19 rem esse testimōniō: that the matter served as evidence; "was for evidence" dat. of purpose  
 20 cōsiliū: council; i.e. discussion in assembly  
 21 frumentāriā: by the grain supply; means  
 22 conventūra (esse): would convene; fut. inf.  
 23 turpius: more shameful than...; comparison  
 auctōre hoste: enemy being author; absolute  
 capere cōsiliū: to adopt a plan; idiom



29.1 Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs 1  
 hostiū adiūctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliqūid calamitātis in  
 proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem.  
 Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; 2. neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī  
 Tasgetī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā 5  
 contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. 3. Nōn hostem auctōrem, sed  
 rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī  
 mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; 4. ārdere Galliam, tot contumēliīs  
 acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperiū redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī militāris  
 exstinctā. 5. Postrēmō quis hoc sibi persuādēret, sine certā rē Ambiorīgem ad 10  
 eiusmodī cōsiliū dēscendisse? 6. Suam sententiā in utramque partem  
 esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem  
 perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsensiret, ūnam esse in  
 celeritāte positā salutē. 7. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentirent,  
 cōsiliū quem habēre exitum, in quō sī praesēns periculum nōn, at certē 15  
 longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda?

**adiungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum:** join, attach, 1  
**adsum, -esse, -fui:** be present, assist, (dat.), 3  
**aliter:** otherwise, 2  
**ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum:** burn, be eager, 1  
**Ariovistus, -ī m.:** (leader of the Germans) 1  
**auctor, auctoris m.:** agent, doer, cause, 4  
**brevis, -e:** short, 3  
**Carnūtēs, -um:** Carnutes, 4  
**clāmitō (1):** to cry violently or repeatedly, 1  
**consentiō, -īre, sensī:** to agree, assent, 1  
**cōsulō, -ere, -sulū, sultum:** consult, 3  
**contemptio, -tiōnis f.:** scorn, disdain, 1  
**contrā:** opposite, facing (acc.), 2  
**contumēlia, -ae f.:** outrage, insult; violence, 1  
**dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** descend, 1  
**dissentiō, -īre, sensī:** to disagree, oppose, 1  
**dolor, -ōris m.:** pain, grief, anger, passion, 2  
**dūrus, -a, -um:** hard(y), harsh, stern, 1  
**eiusmodī:** of this kind, such; so, 3  
**exitus, -ūs m.:** going out, exit, result, issue, 1

**extinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum:** put out,  
 snuff out, extinguish, 1  
**famēs, -is f.:** hunger, 2  
**glōria, -ae, f.:** glory, fame, 2  
**Ītalia, -ae f.:** Italy, 1  
**longinquus, -a, -um:** far, distant, remote, 2  
**militāris, -e:** military, of a soldier, 1  
**obsidio, -iōnis f.:** seige, blockade, 2  
**occāsiō, -iōnis f.:** opportunity, occasion, 2  
**postremō:** at last, finally; abl. as adv. 2  
**praesēns, -ntis:** present, instant, 1  
**redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum:** to bring back, 1  
**sententiā, -ae f.:** opinion, purpose, 2  
**sērō:** late, too late, 1  
**spectō (1):** watch, observe, behold, inspect, 3  
**subsum, -esse, -fui:** to be near, close at hand, 1  
**Tasgetius, -ī m.:** Tasgetius, 3  
**timeō, -ēre, timuī:** to be afraid, be scared, 1  
**tot:** so many, 2

- 1 **contrā ea:** in reply to these things; “against  
**clāmitābat:** kept shouting; frequentative impf.  
**sērō factūrōs (esse):** that (the Romans)  
 would...; ind. disc. with fut. inf., add acc. subj.  
**cum...convēnissent:** after...; plpf. subjunctive  
**māiōrēs:** comp. adj. of magnus with manūs  
**manūs:** bodies; i.e. groups of troops, nom. pl.  
 2 **adiūctīs Germānīs:** abl. absolute  
**cum...esset acceptum:** after...; plpf. pass.  
**aliqūid calamitātis:** some calamity; neut. nom.  
 subject; “something of calamity”  
 3 **Brevem...occāsiōnem:** that...; occāsiōnem is  
 acc. subj. but the predicate brevem is placed  
 first in the clause for emphasis  
**cōsulendī:** gerund (-ing), with occāsiōnem  
 4 **arbitārī:** that (he) thought; add sē (Titūrius) as  
 acc. subject; pres. dep. inf. of arbitror  
**Caesarem...profectum (esse):** that Caesar;  
 pf. dep. inf. proficiscor, governed by arbitrārī  
 5 **interficiendī Tasgetī:** of killing Tasgetius; gen.  
 sg. gerundive modifying gen. Tasgetius, which  
 through a gerund-gerundive flip is translated as  
 a gerund and acc. object  
**cōsiliū...captūrōs:** cōsiliū capere is  
 an idiom: “to adopt an argument”  
**fuisse captūrōs:** would have adopted; pf. inf.  
 sum + fut. pple capiō; in direct discourse this  
 would be cēpissent, an apodosis in a mixed  
 contrary-to-fact condition; parallel with  
 ventūrōs esse, it complementing the protasis  
 sī...adesset below; see page 61  
**neque Eburōnēs:** acc. subj. with ventūrōs esse  
**sī...adesset:** if that one were present; i.e.  
 Caesar, impf. subjunctive adsum, in direct disc.  
 a protasis in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition  
 with fuisse captūrōs and ventūrōs esse; cf. p. 61  
**nostrī:** for us; nostrī is gen. sg. of the personal  
 pronoun nōs; this gen. is an objective gen.  
 modifying contemptiōne  
**ventūrōs esse:** would come; fut. inf. (fut. pple +  
 inf. of sum); in direct discourse it would be  
 venīrent, an apodosis in a pres. contrary-to-fact  
 condition with sī...adesset above; parallel to  
 the 1<sup>st</sup> apodosis fuisse captūrōs, see note, p. 61  
**Nōn hostem...spectāre:** that (he) saw not the  
 enemy but the situation (as) the authority; add  
 sē as acc. subj.; spectāre governs a double acc.  
 where auctōrem is an acc. predicate  
 7 **subesse Rhēnum:** Rhēnum is acc. subj.  
**magnō...dolōrī:** served as great grief for the  
 Germans; “was for great grief for the  
 Germans,” double dative construction: “magnō  
 dolōrī” is dat. of purpose and “Germānīs” is  
 dat. of interest  
 8 **Ariovistī mortem...victōriās:** subject of esse  
 9 **ārdere:** that Gaul is on fire; “is eager (to act),”  
 fire is a common metaphor for passion, in this  
 case, feelings of anger and indignation  
**tot...acceptis:** abl. absolute  
**sub...imperium:** underneath...; sub governs an  
 abl. place where or as here acc. place to which  
**redactam:** PPP redigō, modifying Galliam  
**superiōre...exstinctā:** abl. absolute  
**reī militāris:** of military affairs; with glōria  
 10 **quis...persuādēret** who would persuade  
 himself this; in dir. discourse a deliberative  
 pres. subjunctive, but in ind. discourse  
 secondary sequence it is impf. subj.  
**sine certā...dēscendisse:** (namely) that...; ind.  
 disc. in apposition to neuter acc. sg. hoc above  
**sine certā rē:** without a reliable reason  
 11 **dēscendisse:** had lowered himself; pf. inf.  
 Ambiorix is acting unbecoming of his status  
**Suam sententiā...:** that his opinion...;  
 i.e. Ambiorix’s opinion; Sabinus is still  
 employing Ambiorix as subject  
**in utramque partem:** on each side  
 12 **sī...esset...perventūrōs (esse):** If...was...,  
 would arrive; in dir. discourse a fut. more  
 vivid (sī erit, pervenient); in ind. disc. in  
 secondary seq. the protasis is impf. subj. and  
 the apodosis a fut. inf., see grammar box, p. 59  
**dūrius:** neut. sg. comparative adj., nom. pred.  
 13 **sī...cōnsensiret, esse positam:** if...agreed,  
 had been placed...; in dir. disc., mixed simple  
 condition (sī cōnsentit, posita est); in ind. disc.  
 in secondary sequence the subordinate verb  
 becomes impf. subj. and the main verb pf.  
 pass. inf. (which we translate as plpf. in  
 secondary sequence); see the box, p. 59  
 14 **ūnam...salutē:** a single (means of) safety  
**Cottae atque eōrum:** gen. modifying  
 cōsiliū, the acc. subject of habēre  
 15 **quī dissentirent:** i.e. those who disagreed  
 with Titūrius; verbs in subordinate clauses in  
 ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive  
**quem...exitum:** what outcome does the  
 plan...?; interrog. adj. and noun introducing a  
 question; acc. d.o. of habēre in ind. disc.  
**in quō:** in which...; the cōsiliū of Cotta and  
 others opposing Titūrius is the antecedent  
 16 **periculum:** (there was)...danger; add esset  
**longinquā obsidiōne:** with...; abl. of cause  
**esset timenda:** had to be feared; “was going  
 to be feared” passive periphrastic (gerundive +  
 impf. subj. of sum) expressing necessity

30.1 Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmisque 1  
ōrdinibus ācritē resisterētur, ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabinus, et id  
clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 2. ‘neque is sum,’ inquit, ‘quī  
gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear: hī sapient; sī gravius quid  
acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; 3. quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum 5  
proximis hibernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsū sustineant,  
nōn, reiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs, aut ferrō aut fame intereant.’

31.1 Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā  
dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summū periculū dēducant: 2. facilem esse  
rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac 10  
proben; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputatiōne  
ad mediam noctem perducitur. 3. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs:  
superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūtiātūr primā lūce itūrōs. 4. Cōnsūmitur  
vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcūm  
portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. 5. 15  
Omnia excogitantur, quārē nec sine periculō maneāt et languōre mīlitum  
et vigiliīs periculū augeātur. 6. Primā lūce sic ex castrīs proficiscuntur, ut  
quibus esset persuāsūm nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimo Ambiorige  
cōnsiliū datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedīmentīs.

ācritē: sharply, fiercely, 2  
agmen, agminis n.: column, battle line, formation, 3  
amicus, -a, -um: friendly, 1  
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enlarge 1  
cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 1  
circumspicō, -ere: look around, consider, 1  
clārus, a, um: clear; famous, distinguished 1  
comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4  
coniungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -junctus: join, 1  
consumō, -ere, -sumpsī: to use up, spend, 2  
consurgō, -ere, -surrexī: rise up (together), 1  
contrā: opposite, facing (acc.), 2  
dēducō, -ere: lead or draw down or away, 3  
disputatiō, -tiōnis f.: disagreement, debate 2  
dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 2  
eō, ire, ivī: to go, come, 4  
exaudīō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: hear out, listen to 1  
excogitō (1): think out, devise, contrive, 1  
famēs, -is f.: hunger, 2  
ferrum, -ī n.: iron; sword; tool, 1  
inquam: say, 4  
instrumentum, -ī n.: tool, implement; stock, 1  
intereō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to die, perish, 3  
languor, -ōris m.: fatigue, weariness, sluggishness, 1  
lūx, lūcis, f.: light, 3  
maneō, -ēre, -sī, mānsus: remain, await 2

medius -a -um: in the middle of, 3  
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4  
nec: and not, nor (nec,nec = neither,nor) 2  
ōrō (1): plead, pray (for), entreat, 2  
perducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: to draw out, 1  
perendinus, a, um: of day after tomorrow, 1  
perspicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: perceive, 1  
pertinācia, -ae f.: stubbornness, obstinacy, 1  
portō (1): carry, bear, bring, 2  
prōnūtiō (1): to proclaim, speak forth, 4  
quārē: wherefore, therefore, why, 1  
reiciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectum: cast off or back, 1  
relēgō (1): to send away, remove, 1  
reposcō, -ere: to ask back again, demand, 1  
sapīō, -ere, sapivī: to taste; discern, think, 1  
sententia, -ae f.: opinion, purpose, 2  
sentīō, -ire, -sī, sēnsūm: to feel, realize, 3  
sic: thus, in this way, 3  
sīve, seu: whether, or (if), 2  
tandem: finally, at last, at length, 2  
terreō, -ēre, terrui, territum: to terrify, 2  
vigilia, -ae f.: watch (1/4 period of night), 3  
vincō, -ere, vici, victum: conquer, defeat, 1  
vōs: you (all), 1  
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4

- 1 hāc...habitā: ablative absolute  
in utramque partem: on each side  
prīmisque ōrdinibus: and the first ranks; i.e. centurions  
2 resisterētur: (Sabinus) was resisted; impf. pass. subjunctive; cum is likely causal in sense  
Vincite: Prevail; i.e. win the dispute  
vultis: 2<sup>nd</sup> pl. present volō  
id clāriōre vōce: and (he said) it with a rather loud voice; supply inquit, ablative of manner loses “cum” when there is an adjective, here a comparative adjective  
3 ut...exaudirent: so that...; purpose clause with impf. subj., secondary sequence  
is...quī...terrear: one who would be terrified; i.e. “the sort of man who would...; is is a predicate; relative clause of characteristic with a pres. subj.  
gravissimē: superlative adverb  
4 ex vōbīs: by you; i.e. “danger (heard) from you,” abl. source  
hī: these (soldiers); i.e. at the meeting  
sapient: will know; future tense  
gravius quid: anything more serious; quid is indefinite after sī  
5 sī...acciderit, poscent: happens...will demand; future more vivid (sī fut. pf., fut.), see, p. 59  
que: (and these) who  
sī...liceat, sustineat...nōn...intereant: should be allowed... would endure... would not perish; future less vivid (sī + pres. subj., pres. subj.), licet, sustineō, and intereō; see box, p. 61  
per tē: by you; “through you”  
perendinō diē: on...; abl. time when  
6 hibernīs: winter-quarters; throughout this episode hiberna denotes a winter camp  
commūnem...bellī cāsūm: bellī is a genitive of description modifying cāsūm  
7 nōn...intereant: would not die; nōn modifies the finite verb, pres. subj. intereō  
8 cōnsurgitur: they rise from council; “it is arisen (by them) from the council,” impersonal passive governs a dat. of agent, here missing) and is often translated in the active, see p. 57  
comprehendunt utrumque: they detain both; i.e. the centurions stop Sabinus and Cotta  
ōrant nē: plead that...not; negative ind. command governs pres. subj. in primary seq.  
9 facilem esse rem: (and) that the matter; ind. disc. governed by ōrant, asyndeton, add “et”  
10 seu...seu: whether...or; sīve...sīve, introduces and indirect question with present subjunctives

- sī modo: provided that...; “if only,” a proviso clause governs a present subjunctive  
contrā: on the other hand  
11 nūllam sē salūtem perspicere: that they...; sē is acc. subj., nūllam salūtem is acc. d.o. in indirect discourse governed by ōrant and parallel to “facilem esse rem” above  
Rēs: the matter; i.e. the discussions  
12 dat manūs: gives his hands; i.e. surrenders  
13 sententia: the opinion  
primā lūce: abl. of time when  
(cōs) itūrōs (esse): that they...; fut. inf. eō, ire  
14 vigiliīs: with night-watches  
sua...circumspiceret: looks over his own things; i.e. inspects equipment, gear, property  
quisque: each...; an adjective modifying mīles  
quid...posset: what he was able...; impf. subj. possum in indirect question; with sua, this construction is an example of prolepsis (anticipation): “his things what he was able...” is equivalent to “what things he was able”  
15 quid...cōgerētur: (and) what he was forced; ind. question parallel to the one above  
ex īnstrūmentō: from the store, from the stock; i.e. from the inventory  
16 quārē...maneāt...augeātur: for what reason they would remain not without danger and danger would be increased both by the fatigue and night-watches of the soldiers; ind. question in apposition to omnia, the pres. subjunctive is potential subjunctive  
17 Primā lūce: at...; abl. time when  
castrīs: the camp; castra is plural in form but singular in translation  
ut...cōnsiliū datum (esse): as (if men) who had been persuaded that the plan had been given (to them) not by an enemy but by a man most friendly, Ambiorix; ut here is equivalent to “ut sī,” which introduces a conditional sentence of comparison with the subjunctive (apodosis is missing); plpf. pass. subj. of persuādeō is usually impersonal (common in verbs governing a dative), the dat. obj. quibus may be translated as subject; dātum (esse) is a pf. pass. inf. in an acc. + inf. construction that is subject of persuāsum esset. An alternative translation is “as if (men) who had been persuaded by Ambiorix not as an enemy but as a man most friendly (to them)”  
19 longissimō agmine maximis impedīmentis.: ablative absolutes; add pple “being” for each

32.1 At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigilīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sensērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs, opportūnō atque occultō locō, ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant. 2. et, cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascensū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33.1 Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante provīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eīs accidere cōnsuevit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. 2. At Cotta, quī cōgitasset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor non fuisset, nullā in rē commūnī salutī dēerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. 3. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis minus facile omnia per sē obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāre, ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. 4. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit:

**agmen, agminis n.:** column, battle line, formation, 3  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc); *adv.* before, 4  
**ascensus, -ūs m.:** ascent, climb, 1  
**auctor, auctoris m.:** agent, doer, cause, 4  
**bipertītō:** in two parts, 1  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cogitō (1):** to think, ponder, turn over, 1  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** urge on, incite 3  
**collocō (1):** place together, gather, arrange, 4  
**committō, -ere:** commence, commit, entrust 4  
**concurso (1):** to run about, rush about, 1  
**consistō, -ere, -stīfī:** to stand (still), stop 2  
**convallis, -is m.:** valley, deep lowland, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out on, 3  
**dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** drop, sink, 1  
**dēmum:** at length, finally, 1  
**dispōnō, -ere:** to arrange distribute, 1  
**eiusmodī:** of this kind, such; so, 3  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**fremitus, -ūs m.:** roaring, murmuring, 1  
**imperātōr, -oris m.:** commander, leader, 2  
**incommodus, -a, -um:** unfortunate, disastrous, 3

**inīquus, -a, -um:** uneven, unequal, not fair, 1  
**insidiae, -arum, f.:** ambush, plot, trap, 2  
**longitūdo, -inis f.:** length, width, 2  
**negōtium, ī n.:** business, task, 2  
**nocturnus, -a, -um:** nocturnal, nightly, 3  
**novus, -a, -um:** new, fresh, young, recent, 2  
**obeō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum:** go to meet, attend to, 1  
**occultō (1):** hide, conceal, 3  
**officium, -ī, n.:** duty, obligation, 3  
**opportūnus, -a, -um:** fit, suitable, useful, 2  
**orbis, -is m.:** sphere, circle (+ terrae: world), 2  
**ostendō, -ere, -ī, ntus:** show, promise, 2  
**posteāquam:** after (+ indicative), 1  
**prōnūntiō (1):** speak forth or in advance, 4  
**prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -visum:** to foresee, take precautions, prepare for 3  
**reprehendō, -ere, -dī:** blame; hold back, 1  
**sentīō, -īre, -sī, sēnsū:** to feel, realize, 3  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**timidus, -a, -um:** fearful, shy, 1  
**trepidō (1):** be agitated, be in confusion, 1  
**vigilia, -ae f.:** watch (1/4 period of night), 3

- 1 **ex nocturnō fremitū vigilīsque:** *from the roar at night and the night-watches;* i.e. the Roman soldiers had not settled down but instead stayed awake and made much noise  
**sensērunt:** *they realized*  
 2 **collocātīs īnsidiīs:** abl. absolute  
**bipertītō:** *in two parts;* adverb  
**opportūnō...locō:** *in...;* abl. place where in apposition to in silvīs  
 3 **ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus:** *about two miles away;* “from about two thousand of paces,” partitive genitive;  
 4 **maior pars agminis:** i.e. the Romans  
**cum...dēmīssisset:** *when...had dropped;* plpf. subjunctive  
 5 **ex utrāque parte:** *on both sides;* “from each side”  
**eius vallis:** *of this valley;* eius is demonstrative  
**nōvissimōs:** *the rear (soldiers);* the “most recent” soldiers are the “last” or “rear” soldiers in a column of soldiers, the enemy is attacking the rear and front of the battle column  
 6 **premere, prohibēre, committere:** all of the infinitives are governed by coepērunt  
**prīmōs:** *first (soldiers);* the front of the column  
**ascensū:** *from...;* abl. of separation  
**inīquissimō nostrīs locō:** *(in) a place most unfair to our (men);* place where, superlative  
**proelium committere:** *commence battle;* idiom  
 8 **tum dēmum:** *then at last*  
**Titūrius: Sabinus;** Quintus Titūrius Sabinus  
**quī...provīdisset:** *since he had foreseen nothing beforehand;* “who had foreseen nothing beforehand,” quī + plpf subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (quī = cum is) causal in sense; cf. l. 11  
**trepidāre, concursāre, dispōnere:** historical infinitives with nom. Titūrius as subject, translate all three in the 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. imperfect; at times used to give a rapid sequence of events  
 9 **haec ipsa:** *(he did) these very things;* neuter pl. acc., supply a verb  
**ut...omnia...vidērentur:** *so that all (his wits) seemed;* a result clause, omnia is subject; videor is frequently translated as “seem,” the word “omnia” pertains to his internal turmoil  
**eum: him;** i.e. Titūrius, object of dēficere  
 10 **quod...cōnsuevit:** *which was accustomed to those;* dat. of interest with accidere  
 11 **cōnsilium capere:** *to adopt a plan;* idiom  
**quī cōgitasset...fuisset:** *since he had realized...and had been;* “who had realized...” just as above quī + plpf. subjunctives in a relative clause causal in sense, equivalent to a cum-clause (quī = cum is) causal in sense  
**haec posse:** *that these things...;* neut .pl. acc. subject of inf. of possum  
 12 **ob eam causam:** *for this reason;* “on account of this reason”  
**fuisset:** pluperfect subjunctive of sum  
**nullā in rē:** in nullā rē; order emphasizes adj.  
 13 **commūnī salutī:** dat. object of impf. dēsum  
**in appellandīs cohortandīsque militibus:** both are gerundives modifying militibus, use a gerund-gerundive flip  
 14 **(officia) imperātōris:** add “officia;” there is a contrast between the officia imperātōris and officia militis  
**praestābat:** *performed*  
 15 **minus:** *less;* comparative adv. modifies facile  
**facile:** *easily;* irregular adv. of facilis, facile  
**omnia...obīre:** *to attend to everything*  
**quōque:** *in each...;* abl. place where, quisque  
 16 **faciendum esset:** *had to be done;* “was going to be done,” gerundive + sum (here, impf. subj.) is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity; subjunctive in an ind. question  
**possent:** *they were able;* Cotta and Titūrius  
**prōnūntiāre:** *that (the centurions) command...;* + indirect command  
**ut...cōnsisterent:** ind. command, impf. subj.  
 17 **in orbem:** *in a circle;* so that all soldiers have their backs to one another and fight forward  
**Quod: this...;** “which” translate the relative adj. as a demonstrative adj. with cōnsilium  
 18 **reprehendendum nōn est:** *must not be blamed;* gerundive + sum is a pass. periphrastic expressing necessity or obligation  
**incommodē:** *unadvantageously, disastrously*

## Cum-Clauses

Cum haec verba audīvit	1. temporal	<b>When</b> he heard these words
Cum haec verba audīvisset	2. circumstantial	<b>When/After</b> he had heard these words
	3. causal	<b>Since/Because</b> he had heard these words
	4. concessive	<b>Although</b> he had heard these words

33.5 nam et nostrīs milītibz spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspēratiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō milītēs ab signīs discēderent, quae quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedimentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34.1 At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā acīē prōnūntiāre iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent: proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. 2. Erant et virtūte et studiō pugnantī parēs; nostrī, tametsī ab duce et ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte ponēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. 3. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cōtidiānā exercitātiōne nihil eīs nocērī posse), 4. rūsus sē ad signa recipientēs īnsequantur.

35.1 Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. 2. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī.

acīēs, -ē f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 2  
alacer, alacris, alacre: eager, spirited, 1  
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 3  
arripō, -ere, -ripuī: to grab, snatch, lay hold of, 1  
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrum: to fall, 1  
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 1  
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus: withdraw, move, 2  
clāmōr, clāmōris m.: shout, cry, 2  
compleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6  
cotidiānus, -a, -um: daily, of every day, 3  
dēsero, -ere, -ruī: desert, forsake, abandon, 1  
dēspēratiō, -tiōnis f.: hopelessness, despair 1  
dīligēns, -entis: careful, diligent, accurate, 2  
dux, ducis m./f.: leader, guide, chief, 4  
excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum: go out, 3  
exercitātiō, -iōnis f.: training, practice, 2  
fiō, fierī, factus: become, be made, 3  
flētus, -ūs m.: weeping, wailing, 1  
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4  
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 7  
īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 1  
latus, -eris n.: side, flank, 2  
levitās, -tātis f.: lightness; inconstancy, 1  
minuō, -ere, minuī: to diminish, ebb, 2  
necesse: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4  
nēvē, neu: or not, and not, nor, 2

noceō, -ere, -uī, -itum: harm, injure, hurt, 2  
nudō (1): to make naked or bare, uncover, 1  
observō (1): watch, observe, attend to, 2  
orbis, -is m.: sphere, (+ terrae: world), 2  
pār, parīs: equal, similar, even, 2  
praeciō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: receive in advance, instruct, admonish, 2  
praeda, -ae f.: loot, spoils, cattle, 2  
praetereā: besides, hereafter, 2  
procul: far, from a distance, from afar, 3  
prōcurrō, ere, curri, cursum: run forward, 2  
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 1  
prōnūntiō (1): speak forth or in advance, 4  
properō (1): to hasten, complete quickly, 1  
proprius: more closely, nearer, 3  
quicumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 4  
quispiam, quae-, quod-: anyone, anything (adj. any), 2  
quotiens: as often as, how often?, 1  
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī: to flee back, run back, 1  
reservō (1): lay up, save up, reserve, 1  
rursus: again, backward, back, 4  
studium, -ī n.: zeal, enthusiasm, pursuit, 3  
tametsī: even if, although, though, 1  
timor, -oris m.: fear, dread, anxiety, 2  
vēlox, vēlōcis adj.: swift, rapid, quick, 1  
vulgus, -ī n.: mass, mob, multitude, 2

- 1 **nostrīs milītibz**: for our soldiers; dat. interest  
2 **alacriōrēs**: comparative adjective  
3 **effēcit**: made (x) (y); double acc., alacriōrēs is in the predicative position  
4 **quod**: because  
5 **factum (esse)**: pf. pass. inf. following vidēbātur  
6 **vidēbātur**: seemed; impf. pass.  
7 **accidit**: it happened; governs the noun result clause ut...complērentur  
8 **quod fierī...erat**: (which it was necessary to happen); parenthetical, inf. fiō  
9 **vulgō**: commonly, generally; abl. as adverb  
10 **signīs**: the standards; i.e. military standards  
11 **habēret**: considered; "held," impf. subj. in a relative clause of characteristic, governs a double accusative  
12 **barbarīs...dēfuit**: fail the barbarians; dat. of interest  
13 **tōtā acīē**: on the entire battle line; place where  
14 **prōnūntiāre**: commanded; dūcēs is acc. subj., the inf. governs the ind. command (nē)  
15 **nē quis**: that not anyone...; aliquis, aliquid is a common indefinite pronoun (anyone, anything), but quis, quid is commonly used as an indefinite (who → anyone, what → anything) after sī, nisi, num, and nē. The mnemonic for this construction is the jingle "After sī, nisi, num, and nē, all the ali's go away" (in other words indefinite aliquid becomes just quid)  
16 **illōrum esse praedam**: (and) that the loot was theirs; i.e. the Gauls', the indirect discourse is parallel to the ind. command and likewise governed by prōnūntiāre  
17 **illis**: for them; dat. of interest  
18 **quaecumque...reliquissent**: whatsoever...; relative clause of characteristic (plpf. subj.); the missing antecedent is acc. subject of reservārī  
19 **proinde...existimārent**: therefore let them think that; a jussive (volitive) subjunctive in indirect discourse remains a subjunctive; in secondary sequence the pres. subj. is impf.  
9 **posita (esse)**: have been put aside; i.e. the loot from the Romans is waiting for the Gauls to take it; ind. discourse, omnia is acc. subject  
10 **et virtūte et studiō**: both in...; abl. of respect qualifying parēs  
11 **pugnantī**: gen. sg. gerund  
12 **nostrī**: our (soldiers); nom. subject  
13 **Fortūnā**: fortūnā is personified as a goddess  
14 **ab eā parte**: from that side  
15 **Quā rē animadversā**: with this matter...; abl. abs.; translate the relative as demonstrative  
16 **prōnūntiārī...ut**: it to be commanded that...; pass. inf. governs indirect command  
17 **neu**: and not; nēve  
18 **quam in partem**: in whatever direction...; relative clause of characteristic with pf. subjunctive of faciō  
19 **cēdant**: they withdraw (from this direction)  
20 **nihil**: not at all; adverbial accusative  
21 **eīs...posse**: that it is possible for them; ind. discourse with an impersonal inf. possum  
22 **sē...recipientēs**: (the Romans) while retreating to their standards; i.e. attack the Romans as they try to relin themselves with the fixed military standards for each unit acc. d.o. of īnsequantur  
23 **īnsequantur**: pres. subjunctive, part of the indirect command introduced by ut in line 13  
24 **Quō praeceptō...: this instruction**...; abl. abs.  
25 **ab eīs**: i.e. by the Gauls  
26 **dīligentissimē**: superlative adverb  
27 **quaequam cohors**: any cohort  
28 **vēlōcissimē**: superlative adverb, vēlōx, vēlōcis  
29 **necesse erat**: it was necessary  
30 **recipi**: pres. pass. inf., tēla is neuter acc. subj.

#### Ablative Absolute in Translation

Absolutes are circumstantial, causal, or concessive in sense, even if the translation does not reveal it. Cum-Clauses are just as versatile and can have a similar variety of uses within a Latin sentence.

verbis auditis	1. raw translation	(with) the words having been heard...
	2. Circumstantial	When/After the words had been heard...
	3. Causal	Since/Because the words had been heard...
	4. Concessive	Although the words had been heard...
Caesar audiente	1. raw translation	(with) Caesar listening
	2. Circumstantial	When/While Caesar is/was listening...
	3. Causal	Since/Because Caesar is/was listening...
	4. Concessive	Although Caesar is/was listening...



35.3 Rūrsus cum in eum locum unde erant ēgressī revertī coeperant, et ab 1  
eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; 4. sīn  
autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūfī locus relinquebatur neque ab tantā  
multitūdine coniecta tēla confertī vitāre poterant. 5. Tamen tot incommodīs  
cōfliktāfī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant; et magnā parte diē 5  
cōnsūptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod  
ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. 6. Tum Titō Balventiō, quī superiōre  
annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōritātis, utrumque  
femur trāgulā trāicitur; 7. Quintus Lucānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē  
pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; 8. Lucius Cotta lēgātus 10  
omnēs cohortēs ordinēque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

36.1 Hīs rēbus permōtus Quintus Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs  
cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum  
mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat. 2. Ille appellātus respondit: si velit  
sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad 15  
militum salutem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē  
suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, 3. sī videātur,  
pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō de suā  
ac militum salutē impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat  
atque in eō persevērat. 20

**adhortor, -ārī, -ātum:** encourage, urge on, 1  
**adversus, -a, -um:** opposite, in front, 2  
**armātus, -a, -um:** armed, armor-clad, 2  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.:** influence, clout, 3  
**Balventius, -ī m.:** Balventius, 1  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus:** withdraw, move, 2  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** urge on, incite 3  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**committō, -ere:** commence, commit, entrust 4  
**communicō (1):** share, impart, 4  
**confertus, a, um:** crowded together, dense, 3  
**conflictō (1):** contend with, harm, 1  
**conspiciō, -ere, spexi, spectus:** see, behold 5  
**consumō, -ere, -sumpsī:** to use up, spend, 2  
**eō, ire, ivī, itum:** to go, come, 4  
**excēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessum:** go out, 3  
**femur, femori n.:** thigh, 1  
**fidēs, ei f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**funda, ae f.:** sling, 3  
**Gnaeus, -ī m.:** Gnaeus, 1  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**impetrō (1):** to obtain, accomplish, 3  
**incommodus, -a, -um:** unfortunate, disastrous, 3  
**indignus, -a, -um:** unworthy, undeserving, 1

**interpōnō, -ere, -posuī:** include, introduce, 2  
**interpretes, interpretis m/f.:** messenger, 1  
**Lucānius, -ī m.:** Lucianus, 1  
**lūx, lūcis, f.:** light, 3  
**nec:** and not, nor (nec,nec = neither,nor) 2  
**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, 2  
**noceō, -ere, -ui, -itum:** harm, injure, hurt, 2  
**octāvus, -a, -um:** eighth, 1  
**ōs, ōris n.:** face, mouth 1  
**parcō, -ere, pepercī:** to spare, refrain (dat), 2  
**perseverō (1):** to persist, persevere, 1  
**pīlum, -ī n.:** pilum, javelin, 3  
**Pompeius, -ī m.:** Pompey, 1  
**procul:** far, from a distance, from afar, 3  
**respondeō, -ere, -dī, -ōnsum:** to answer, 3  
**revertor, -ī, reversus sum:** to turn back, return, 2  
**rogō (1):** to ask; tell, 2  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 4  
**saucius, -a, -us:** wounded, injured, hurt, 1  
**sīn:** but if, if however, 1  
**stō, -āre, steti, stātum:** stand still, stop, 3  
**subveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** come up to, aid,  
relieve, 2  
**Titus, -ī m.:** Titus, 4  
**tot:** so many, 2

**trāgula, -ae f.:** tragula (a Gallic javelin) 3  
**trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** pierce, cast across, 2  
**unde:** whence, from which source, 3  
**vērō:** in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

**vir, virī m.:** man, 4  
**vitō (1):** avoid, evade, shun, 1  
**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3  
**vulus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 3

1 **unde erant ēgressī:** plpf. dep. ēgredior  
**revertī:** present deponent inf.  
2 **cesserant:** *had withdrawn;* As some of the  
Romans made attacks from the circle (orbis),  
the opposing enemy withdrew temporarily and  
the flanks (quī proximī steterant) attacked.  
When the Romans returned to the circle, the  
opposing enemy would advance once again  
3 **locum tenēre:** *to hold ground;* i.e. if the  
Romans did not advance in groups but instead  
remained together in the circle  
**vellent:** *they should wish;* an impf. subjunctive,  
the protasis of a mixed condition in secondary  
sequence;  
**nec...neque:** *neither...nor;* linking the apodosis  
**locus:** *opportunity...*  
**virtūfī:** *for valor;* dat. of purpose  
4 **confertī:** modifies the nom. subject  
**incommodis cōfliktāfī:** *harmed by so many  
disadvantages*  
5 **multīs...accēptis:** ablative absolute  
**resistēbant:** *they kept on fighting;* iterative  
impf.  
**magnā...cōnsūptā:** abl. absolute  
6 **cum...pugnārētur:** *although they fought;* cum is  
concessive in force; impersonal passive p. 57  
**quod ipsīs...indignum:** *which was unworthy of  
the Romans themselves;* indignus, “unworthy  
of,” governs an abl., here the intensive ipsīs  
7 **Titō Balventiō:** *to Titus Balventius;* dat. of  
interest  
**superiōre annō:** *in...;* abl. of time when  
8 **prīmum pīlum:** *the first pilum;* the officer  
known as Primus Pilus was the highly ranked  
centurion who threw the first pīlum in battle;  
Titus held this rank during the previous year  
**virō fortī:** dat. in apposition to Titō Balventiō  
**magnae auctōritātis:** *of great clout;* gen. of  
quality parallel with dative fortī  
**utrumque femur:** *each thigh;* neuter subject  
9 **eiusdem ōrdinis:** *of the same rank;* gen. quality  
**fortissimē:** superlative adverb  
**pugnāns:** nom. sg. pres. pple, pugnō  
10 **subvenit:** *he is approaching to help*  
11 **in adversum ōs:** *full on the mouth;* “onto the  
opposing mouth,” acc. place to which; another  
meaning for ōs, ōris is “face”

12 **hīs rēbus:** *because of these things;* abl. cause  
**suōs:** *his own (men);* i.e. Ambiorix’s men, the  
reflexive should grammatically refer to the  
subject Cotta’s men but it does not  
13 **eum:** *him;* i.e. Ambiorix  
14 **rogātum:** *to ask;* supine (PPP + um) in the  
accusative expresses purpose, which in  
English is often expressed with an infinitive  
**ut...parcat:** ind. command following rogātum  
**sibi militibusque:** *him and (his) soldiers;* i.e.  
Cotta and his soldiers  
**sī velit:** *if he wishes;* subordinate clauses in  
ind. discourse often fall into the subjunctive;  
here a pres. subjunctive of volō, velle in what  
was originally a present simple condition  
15 **sēcum:** cum sē  
**licēre:** *it is allowed (for him);* i.e. for Titurius,  
ind. discourse with an impersonal verb  
**spērāre:** *that (he) hoped;* i.e. Ambiorix hoped  
**ā multitūdine:** i.e. from the Gauls  
**quod...pertineat:** *(that) which...;* the missing  
antecedent is acc. subject of posse impetrārī;  
this is a relative clause of characteristic with  
the present subjunctive  
16 **ipsī:** *that for (Titurius) himself;* dative interest  
or possible a dat. of agent with *noctum irī*  
**nihil:** *not at all;* “in no way,” acc. of respect  
**noctum irī:** *it would not be harmed;* “it is  
going to be harmed:” a future passive inf.  
(supine + pres. pass. inf. of eō, ire), here  
impersonal  
**ipsī...noctum irī:** *that indeed he himself  
would not at all be harmed;* “indeed for him  
himself not at all it was going to be harmed,”  
a rare future passive inf. (supine + pres. pass.  
inf. of eō, ire), here impersonal  
**sē...interpōnere:** *he gave his pledge*  
17 **Ille:** *that one;* i.e. Titurius speaks with Cotta  
**videātur:** *it seems good;* i.e. if he agrees  
with Ambiorix’s terms; subordinate clauses  
govern a subjunctive in ind. discourse  
**pugnā:** *from battle;* abl. separation  
**ut...colloquantur:** *(namely) that...;* noun  
result clause governed by impersonal videātur  
18 **spērāre:** *that (Cotta) hoped;* see also line 15  
**ab eō:** *from him;* i.e. from Ambiorix  
19 **sē itūrum esse:** fut. inf. eō, ire

37.1 Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et 1  
 p̄m̄ōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem 1  
 accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suīsque ut idem faciant  
 imperat. 2. Interim, dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō 5  
 ab Ambiorīge īstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. 3. Tum 5  
 vērō suō mōre ‘Victōriam’ conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in  
 nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. 4. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum  
 maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; 5. ex 10  
 quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudine hostium  
 premerētur, aquilam intrā vallum proiēcit; ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns 10  
 occiditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; 6. noctū ad unum  
 omnēs, despērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt. 7. Paucī ex proeliō lapsī incertīs  
 itineribus per silvās ad Titum Labiēnum legātum in hiberna perveniunt atque  
 eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

38.1 Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī 15  
 erant eius regnō finitīmī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit  
 peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. 2. Rē demonstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs  
 posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī  
 atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās acceperint, iniuriās occāsionem 20  
 dīmittant: 3. interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs  
 interīsse demōnstrat; 4. nihil esse negōtī, subitō oppressam legiōnem quae  
 cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile  
 hāc ōrātiōne Nervios persuadet.

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw aside or away, 2  
 adiutor, -ōris m.: helper, assistant, 2  
 aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary; *adv.* scarcely, 4  
 agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4  
 aquila, -ae f.: eagle, eagle standard, 4  
 aquilifer, -ferī m.: eagle-bearer, 1  
 centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4  
 circum: around, round about, 2  
 concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 2  
 conclamō (1): cry out together, shout, 2  
 condiō, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 2  
 consultō: on purpose, deliberately, 3  
 despērō (1): to have no hope, give up, 2  
 dīmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus: lose, send (away), 3  
 hiemō (1): spend the winter, 3  
 hortor, -ārī, hortātum: encourage, urge, 2  
 incertus, -a, -um: unreliable, doubtful, 2  
 iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 4  
 institūō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum: set, establish, 3  
 intereō, -īre, -ivi, -itum: to die, perish, 3  
 intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 3

lābor, lābī, lapsū: glide, slide, slip, 1  
 liberō (1): free, liberate, 3  
 mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4  
 negōtium, ī n.: business, task, 2  
 noctū: by night; abl. as *adv.* nox, noctis, 4  
 occāsio, -iōnis f.: opportunity, occasion, 2  
 occidō, -ere, occidi, occisus: kill, cut down 4  
 opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum: crush,  
 burden, overwhelm, 3  
 paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 4  
 paulātim: gradually, little by little, 3  
 peditātus, -ūs m.: infantry, 3  
 perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4  
 Petrosidius, -ī m.: Petrosidius, 1  
 posterus, -a, -um: next, following, 2  
 praesentia, -ae f.: presence, 2  
 profiteor, -ērī, -fessum: profess, declare, 1  
 proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw  
 forward, project, 2  
 proprius: more closely, nearer, 3  
 sequor, -ī, secūtus: follow, pursue, 4

sermo, -mōnis m.: conversation, discourse, 3  
 silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4  
 statim: immediately, at once, 4  
 Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4  
 tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy, 2

tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, officer, 2  
 ulciscor, -ī, ultum: avenge, take vengeance 1  
 ululātus, -ūs m.: howling, wailing, yelling, 1  
 unde: whence, from which source, 3  
 vērō: in truth, truly, in fact, to be sure, 3

1 quōs...tribūnōs mīlitum...habebat: *those*  
 tribunes of the soldiers whom...; tribūnōs is  
 antecedent—not part of—quōs...habēbat  
 2 sequi: inf. sequor  
 3 iubet: both tribūnōs, centuriōnēs are objects  
 3 accessisset: plpf. subjunctive accēdō  
 iussus: PPP iubeō, iubēre  
 imperātum facit: carries out the command;  
 “the thing having been commanded” PPP  
 suīs: his own (men); dat. object of imperat  
 ut...faciant: ind. command  
 idem: the same thing; id-dem, neuter acc. sg.  
 4 dē condiōnibus...agunt: they talk about the  
 conditions...; common idiom employing agō and  
 dē + ablative, here the conditions of surrender  
 inter sē: with one another; ‘among themselves’  
 longior...īstituitur sermō: a longer  
 conversation is arranged  
 cōsultō: deliberately; ablative as an adverb  
 5 circumventus: the nom. subject is Sabinus  
 6 suō mōre: by their custom; “from their custom”  
 Victoriā: Latin exclamation take the acc.  
 7 impetū...factō: ablative absolute  
 in nostrōs: against our (soldiers)  
 8 Reliqui: the remaining (men); i.e. the survivors  
 sē...recipiunt: retreat; “take themselves back”  
 9 erant ēgressi: plpf. deponent ēgredior  
 ex quibus: from these; for transitions, English  
 speakers prefer a demonstrative  
 10 aquilam: the eagle; i.e. the entire wooden  
 standard which contained the golden image of  
 an eagle on top; the aquilifer saves the eagle  
 from capture as one today might save a flag  
 vallum: i.e. the wall of the camp, which often  
 consisted of mound of earth with a wooden  
 palisade on top and a deep ditch below  
 prō: in front of; + ablative  
 pugnāns: pres. pple, pugnō  
 11 aegrē...sustinent: with difficulty sustained;  
 “scarcely sustained”  
 ad noctem: till the night  
 noctū: at night; adverb  
 ad unum: to the man  
 12 despērātās salūte: abl. abs.  
 ipsi: themselves; nom. pl., intensive pronoun

lapsi: having slipped; pf. deponent pple labor  
 incertīs itineribus: by uncertain routes  
 13 in hiberna: into winter-quarters; a journey of  
 about 100 miles at this time  
 14 certiōrem faciunt: inform; “make him more  
 certain;” a common idiom in Caesar  
 gestīs: carried out; PPP gerō  
 15 sublātus: uplifted; i.e. “elated;” PPP tollō, as  
 often, the prefix sub- means “from under up”  
 in Aduatucōs: to the Aduatuci; or ‘among...’  
 16 regnō: dative with the predicate adj. finitīmī  
 17 subsequi: pres. deponent inf.  
 Rē...concitātīs: two ablative absolutes  
 18 posterō diē: on...; ablative time when  
 in Nervios: to the Nervii, among the Nervii  
 nē...acceperint (et)...dīmittant: that they  
 not...; negative ind. command governed by  
 hortātur  
 suī...liberandī: of freeing themselves; gen. sg.  
 gerundive; when translating, employ a gerund-  
 gerundive flip: make suī the gerund’s object  
 (sē), this genitive modifies occāsionem  
 19 ulciscendī Rōmānōs: a gen. sg. gerund and  
 acc. object (this construction is unusual since  
 it is often expressed as a noun + modifying  
 gerundive); parallel to liberandī and likewise  
 modifying occāsionem  
 prō eīs...iniuriās: (in return) for...; eīs is a  
 demonstrative modifying iniuriās  
 quās acceperint: perfect subj. in a relative  
 clause of characteristic; the antecedent is fem.  
 plural iniuriās  
 20 interfectōs esse: that...; pf. pass. infinitive  
 interficiō with lēgātōs duōs as acc. subject  
 lēgātōs duōs: i.e. Sabīnus and Cotta  
 21 interīsse: to have perished; interīsse, pf. inf.  
 intereō with partem as acc. subject  
 nihil esse negōtī: that there is no trouble;  
 “nothing of business;” negōtī is a partitive gen.  
 the acc. + inf. is governed by profitētur below  
 oppressam: having been surprised; opprimō  
 22 hiemet: pres. subj., verbs in subordinate  
 clauses in ind. disc. are commonly subjunctive  
 interficī: pres. passive inf., legiōnem is acc.  
 subj.  
 sē: that he (was); ad esse; following profitētur

39.1 Itaque cōnfestim dīmīssīs nuntīīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, 1  
Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās  
manūs possunt cōgunt et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant  
nōndum ad eum famā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. 2. Huic quoque accidit, quod  
fuit necesse, ut nōnnullī militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās 5  
discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. 3. Hīs circumventīs  
magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et  
clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt,  
vāllum conscendunt. 4. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs  
in celeritāte ponēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore 10  
victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

40.1 Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae magnīs  
prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent: obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. 2.  
Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs  
admodum CXX excitantur incredibīlī celeritāte; quae dēesse operī vidēbantur, 15  
perficiuntur. 3. Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctīs copiīs, castra  
oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā pridīe, ab nostrīs resistitur:  
4. hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.

**adipiscor**, -ī, **adeptum**: get, obtain, reach, 1  
**admodum**: completely, quite; just about, 2  
**advolo** (1): to fly to, rush to, 1  
**aeger**, -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 4  
**Ceutronēs**, -um m.: Ceutrones (tribe) 1  
**cliens**, -entis m.: client, dependent, 4  
**compleō**, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum: fill up, fill, 6  
**comportō** (1): carry together, collect, 3  
**concurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus: run eagerly, clash, 2  
**cōnfestim**: immediately, 4  
**confidō**, -ere, **confisus sum**: trust, believe, rely upon, 4  
**conscendō**, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: climb, board, 1  
**deinceps**: one after another, successively, 1  
**dīmīttō**, -ere, -mīsi, -missus: send (away), 3  
**excitō** (1): excite, rouse up, raise, inspire, 3  
**fāma**, -ae f.: rumor, story, hearsay, 2  
**fiō**, fierī, **factus**: become, be made, 3  
**fossa**, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 2  
**Geidumni**, -ōrum m.: Geidumni, 1  
**Grudiū**, -ōrum m.: Grudi, 1  
**improvīsus**, -a, -um: unforeseen, unexpected, 1  
**incipiō**, -ere, **incepī**, **inceptum**: begin, 1  
**incredibīlis**, -e: unbelievable, 1  
**intercipiō**, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum: catch, intercept, 3

**Levācī**, -ōrum m.: Levaci, 1  
**lignātiō**, -tiōnis f.: gathering of timber, 1  
**materia**, -ae f.: timber, wood, material, 2  
**necesse**: necessary; (it is) necessary, 4  
**noctū**: by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4  
**nōndum**: not yet, 3  
**nōnnullus**, -a, -um: some, not none, 2  
**obsidēō**, -ere, **sēdi**, **sessum**: besiege, beset, 2  
**opus**, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 2  
**perferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: carry through, 2  
**perficiō**, -ere: complete, accomplish, 3  
**perpetuus**, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4  
**Pleumoxiū**, -iōrum m.: Pleumoxi, 1  
**posterus**, -a, -um: next, following, 2  
**pridīe**: on the day before, the previous day, 1  
**prōpōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positum**: to set forth, 1  
**quoque**: also, 2  
**repentinus**, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected, 4  
**silva**, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 4  
**socius**, -ī m.: comrade, ally, companion, 2  
**sustentō** (1): to hold up, sustain, maintain, 1  
**via**, -ae, f.: road, way, path, 2  
**victor**, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 1

- 2 **eōrum**: *their*; i.e. of the Nervii  
**quam maximās...possunt**: *the largest groups (as) they are able*; quam + superl. = "as X as possible;" possunt makes construction explicit  
**cōgunt**: *they gather together*  
3 **dē improvīsō**: *unexpectedly*; "from the unforeseen," often with preposition  
4 **nōndum ad eum**: part of the abl. absolute from famā to perlātā  
**perlātā**: PPP perferō  
**Titūrī**: gen. sg., Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus  
4 **Huic quoque**: *to this one also*; i.e. to Cicero  
**quod fuit necesse**: *which was inevitable*  
**ut...interciperentur**: *that...*; noun result clause governed by accidit  
**causā**: *for the sake of...*; + preceding genitives  
6 **discessissent**: *had gone out*; i.e. from the camp, plpf. subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic  
7 **Hīs circumventīs**: abl. absolute  
**magnā manū**: *with a great band*; abl. of means with the ablative absolute  
8 **Nostrī**: *our (soldiers)*  
9 **conscendunt**: (*and*) *climb*; asyndeton, the lack of conjunctions suggests that the Romans were acting quickly and decisively  
**aegrē**: *with difficulty*; adv. of aeger  
10 **adeptī**: *having attained*; perfect deponent pple adipiscor  
**in perpetuum**: *for ever*; "into perpetual (time)," supply neuter acc. tempus  
**fore**: *would be*; alternative to futūrum esse, a fut. inf. in ind. discourse governed by cōnfidēbant, sē is acc. subj.  
12 **magnīs...praemiīs**: *...(to the messengers)*; abl. absolute; the offer is made to the messengers of the letters  
13 **sī pertulissent**: *if (the messengers) had carried (the letters) through (to Caesar)*; protasis in a past contrary-to-fact condition  
**obsessīs...viīs**: abl. absolute causal in force, the viae are likely paths or routes  
**missī**: (*the messengers*) *sent*; PPP mittō  
14 **noctū**: *at night*; ablative as adverb  
**causā**: *for the sake of*; + preceding genitive  
15 **incredibīlī celeritāte**: *with...*; abl. of manner drops "cum" when there is an adjective, here i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> declension  
**quae dēesse operī vidēbantur**: (*the things*) *which seemed to be lacking for the work*; i.e. whatever seemed to be incomplete  
16 **perficiuntur**: missing antecedent of the relative clause is subject  
**posterō diē**: *on...*; time when  
**multō**: *much...*; "by much," ablative of degree of difference with comparative maiōribus  
**maiōribus...copiīs**: ablative absolute  
17 **(et) fossam**: asyndeton  
**Eādem ratiōne**: *by the same method*  
**quā (ratiōne) pridīe**: *in which (manner) (they resisted) the day before*; i.e. "as on the day before," relative clause, add ratiōne, resistitur  
**ab nostrīs resistitur**: *our men resisted*; "it is resisted by our (men)," impers. pass. below  
18 **hoc idem**: *this same thing*; id-dem, neuter singular nom. subject  
**fit**: 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. pres. fiō; often passive for facio  
**reliquīs...diēbus**: *in...*; abl. time when

#### Impersonal Verb Constructions

Impersonal verbs are found in the 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. and translated with the subject "it." The passive of an intransitive verb (e.g. ventum est) is often used impersonally with dat. of agent but should be translated actively.

accidit	it happens + ut (noun result clause)	p. 18, 20, 28, 32, 48, 50, 56
constat	it is agreed	p. 18, 34
fās est	it is right + inf.	p. 28
fit	it happens/is done + ut (noun result clause)	p. 56
licet	it is allowed + inf.	p. 10, 32, 46, 52, 58
oportet	it is desirable/fitting/necessary + inf.	p. 6, 18
potest	it is possible	p. 10, 50
videtur	it seems +ut (noun result clause)	p. 52
cōsurgitur	they rise (it is arisen)	p. 46
perventum est	they arrived (it was arrived)	p. 38
pugnārētur	they were fighting (it was fought)	p. 52, 64
pugnātum est	each side fought (it was fought by each side)	p. 14
resistitur	our men resisted (it was resisted by our men)	p. 56
ventum est	they came (it has been come)	p. 16, 38

40.5 Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegrus, non vulneratus facultas quietis datur. 6. Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turre contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attextuntur. 7. Ipse Cicerō cum tenuissimā valētudine esset, nō nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41.1 Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviorum quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. 2. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat commemorant omnem esse in armīs Galliam; 3. Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnāri. 4. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte: Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. 5. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quidquam ab hīs praesidī spērent, quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populūque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētudinē nōlint: 6. licēre illis incolumibus per sē ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficiscī.

**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 4  
**aditus, -ūs m.:** approach, access, entrance, 2  
**aeger, -gra, -grum:** sick, weary, 4  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, do, 4  
**attexō, -ere, -texuī, textum:** weave, add on 1  
**colloquium, -iī n.:** conversation, talk, 1  
**commemorō (1):** call to mind, recollect, 1  
**comparō (1):** prepare, get ready, provide, 4  
**concursum, -ūs m.:** running together, gathering, 1  
**contabulō (1):** to equip with boarded platforms, 1  
**crātis, -is f.:** (wicker) frame, fascines, 1  
**diffidō, -ere, diffisum:** mistrust, despair (dat.), 1  
**dux, ducis m./f.:** leader, guide, chief, 4  
**errō (1):** to wander, rove, stray, 1  
**fidēs, ei f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**incolumis, -e:** unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2  
**institūō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set, establish, 3  
**inveterāscō (1):** to become old, 1  
**labor, -ōris m.:** labor, hardship, task, 1  
**lorīca, -ae f.:** parapet, breastwork, 1  
**metus, -ūs f.:** dread, fear, 2  
**mūrālis, -e:** of a wall, mural, 1  
**noctū:** by night; abl. as adv. nox, noctis, 4

**nocturnus, -a, -um:** nocturnal, nightly, 3  
**nōlō, nolle, nolū:** to refuse, be unwilling, 1  
**ostentō (1):** show (off), display, point out, 1  
**parcō, -ere, peperci:** to spare, refrain (dat), 2  
**pīlum, -i n.:** pilum, javelin, 3  
**pinna, -ae f.:** battlement on wall; feather, 1  
**potestās, -tātis f.:** power, ability, capacity, 3  
**praesidium, -iī n.:** guard, protection; assistance, 2  
**praeustus, -a, -um:** burned at the end, 1  
**princeps, -cipis m./f.:** chief, leader, 4  
**quicumque, quae-, quod-:** whosoever, 4  
**quies, quietis f.:** rest, repose, sleep, 2  
**quisquam, quidquam:** anyone, anything? 2  
**recūsō (1):** to object to, refuse, reject, 1  
**sermo, -mōnis m.:** conversation, discourse, 3  
**sudis, -is:** stake, spike, 1  
**tenuis, -e:** thin, slender, 1  
**tunc:** then, at that time, 1  
**ultrō:** voluntarily; moreover, beyond, 3  
**valētudo, -dinis f.:** state of health, health, 1  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice; utterance, word, 4  
**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3

- 1 **nocturni temporis:** partitive genitive  
**ad laborem:** for work; expressing purpose it modifies the subject not the verb: the line reads “no part of the night time (devoted) for work is interrupted” whereas we would prefer “no part of the night time is interrupted from work”  
**aegrus:** to the sick; dat. indirect object  
2 **vulneratus:** dat. indirect object  
**quietis:** gen. sg. quies  
**quaecumque...opus sunt:** whatsoever is the work (to be done); or “whatsoever is the need” opus est, “there is a need,” often governs a dat. of interest and abl. of the object wanted; less frequently, as here, there is a subject and opus is the predicate  
**proximi diei:** gen. sg.  
3 **noctū:** at night; abl. as adverb  
4 **contabulantur:** are equipped with boarded platforms; the wooden towers are multi-storied with wood floors  
5 **Ipse Cicerō:** nom. subj. within the cum-clause  
**cum.esset:** although he was; impf. subjunctive in a cum-clause which is concessive in force  
**tenuissimā valētudine:** of very weak health; abl. of quality, predicate as esset  
6 **nē...quidem:** not even; nē quidem emphasizes the intervening word  
**ad quietum:** for ...; ad + acc. expresses purpose  
**ut...cōgerētur:** so that he was compelled; impf. subj. in a result clause  
**ultrō:** voluntarily  
7 **parcere:** governs a dative  
8 **aliquem...aditum:** some (right of) entry into conversation; the Nervii had previously established a rapport with the Romans that entitled them to approach and speak  
9 **causamque amicitiae:** reason for friendship  
**sēsē velle:** that they are willing; i.e. Nervii, velle is a pres. inf. vōlō, colloquī is a deponent

- complementary infinitive  
10 **factā potestāte:** permission having been given; “opportunity having been made,” idiom  
**ēgerat:** had discussed; “had conducted”  
11 **trānsisse:** pf. inf. trānsēō, Germānōs acc. subj.  
12 **oppugnāri:** are being assaulted; pres. pass., hiberna, “winter-quarters” is acc. subject  
**Addunt:** they add; i.e. “they say in addition”  
13 **Ambiorīgem ostentant:** they point to Ambiorix  
**fidei faciendī:** of forming trust; gen. sg. gerundive + noun; gerund-gerundive flip  
**eōs:** that they; i.e. the Romans, acc. subject  
14 **quidquam...praesidī:** any protection; “anything of protection,” partitive gen.  
**spērent:** hoped; impf. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse  
**quī...diffidant:** pres. subj. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse  
**sēsē hōc esse...animō:** that they are of this mind toward ...; i.e. the Nervii, abl. of quality as predicate  
15 **in:** toward ...  
**ut...recūsēt...nōlint:** result clause, present subjunctive recūsō, nōlō  
**nihil nisi hiberna:** nothing except winter-quarters; the Nervii claim to be willing to be friends (see “amicitiae” above) but will not allow the Romans to maintain a military camp in the territory of the Nervii  
16 **licēre:** that it is allowed for those ...; indirect disc., the infinitive represents an impersonal verb with governs a dat. of interest  
17 **per sē:** by themselves  
**discēdere...proficiscī:** infinitives, active and deponent, governed by licēre  
**quāscumque in partēs...velint:** in whatever directions they want/would want; pres. subj. vōlō, in a relative clause of characteristic

#### Indicative Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

##### Simple Present (Pres., Pres.)

dixī “sī credis, errās.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre  
 I said, “if you believe this, you are wrong” I said that, if you believed this, you were wrong.

##### Future More Vivid (fut. (pf.), fut.):

dixī “sī credēs/credideris, errābis.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse  
 I said, “if you believe this, you will be wrong” I said that, if you believed this, you would be wrong.

##### Simple Past (past, past):

dixī “sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī.” → dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.  
 I said, “if you believed this, you were wrong” I said that, if you (had) believed this, you had been...

for more, see p. 84



41.7 Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem: 8. sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

42.1 Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vallō pedum IX et fossā pedum XV hiberna cingunt. 2. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ab nōbīs cognōverant et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab eīs docēbantur; 3. sed nullā ferramentōrum copiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurire vidēbantur. 4. Quā quidem ex rē hominū multitudō cognoscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium pedum XV in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt 5. reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vallī, falcēs testudinēsque, quās idem captivī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43.1 Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coōrtō ventō, ferventēs fusilī ex argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. 2. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt.

adiutor, -ōris m.: helper, assistant, 2  
 altitudō, -inis f.: height, depth, altitude, 2  
 argilla, -ae f.: potter's clay, white clay, 1  
 armātus, -a, -um: armed, armor-clad, 2  
 caespes, -pitīs m.: turf, sod, grass, 1  
 captivus, -a, -um: prisoner, captive, 3  
 casa, -ae f.: house, home, 1  
 cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīctus: surround, 1  
 circuitus, -ūs m.: circumference, circuit, 1  
 circumcidō, -ere, -cidi: cut around or off, 1  
 coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9  
 comprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, arrest; grasp 4  
 condiō, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 2  
 coōrior, -īrī, coōrtus: arise, break out, 2  
 discō, -ere, -didici: learn, get to know, 2  
 differō, -ferre, distuli: carry different ways 2  
 doceō, -ēre, -ui, -ctus: teach, tell, 4  
 exhauriō, -īre, -ivī: take away, empty dry, 1  
 falx, falcis f.: grappling-hook; pruning-hook, 1  
 ferramenta, -ōrum n.: iron tool, implement 1  
 fervefactio, -ere, -feci: make hot, boil, melt, 1  
 ferveō, -ēre, ferui: glow hot; seethe, boil, 1  
 fossa, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 2  
 funda, ae f.: sling, 3  
 fusilis, -e: molten, liquid, soft, 1

Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, 1  
 gladius, -ī m.: sword, 3  
 glans, glandis m.: slug, bullet for sling, 1  
 hora, -ae f.: hour, 4  
 iaciō, iacere, ieci, iactum: to throw, 4  
 iaculum, -ī n.: javelin, dart, 2  
 idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 1  
 ignis, ignis, m.: fire, 4  
 impetrō (1): obtain, accomplish, 3  
 iustitia, -ae f.: justice, fairness, equity, 1  
 modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4  
 mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 4  
 nōs: we, 1  
 parō (1): prepare, make ready, 3  
 perficiō, -ere: complete, accomplish, 3  
 repellō, -ere, repuli, -pulsum: drive back, repulse, 1  
 respondeō, -ēre, -di, -ōnsum: to answer, 3  
 sagulum, -ī n.: small military cloak, mantle 1  
 septimus, -a, -um: seventh, 1  
 strāmentum, -ī n.: straw; saddle, housing, 1  
 tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum: to cover, 1  
 terra, -ae f.: earth, ground, land, 2  
 testūdo, -tūdinis f.: tortoise, 2  
 ventus, ventī m.: wind, 3

- 1 **haec**: *these (things)*; neuter pl.  
**ūnum**: *one (thing)*; neut. acc. sg., Caesar contrasts the multiple points of the Nervii with the single powerful point made by Cicero  
**modo**: *just, only*; an adverb modifying ūnum  
 2 **nōn esse**: *it is not..*; ind. discourse; “accipere... condiōnem” is the infinitive subject of esse and cōnsuētūdinem is the acc. predicate  
**ab armīs discēdere**: *to lay down their weapons*; “to depart from their weapons”  
**sī...velint...ūtantur...mittant**: *if they wish...let them employ...and send*; all pres. subj. in a mixed condition; in direct discourse the protasis velint is a fut. indicative and the apodosis verbs are imperatives or jussives, which in ind. discourse become jussives  
 3 **sē adiūtōre ūtantur**: *let them employ him (as) an advocate*; ūtor governs an ablative objects, adiūtōre is an abl. in the predicative position  
**spērāre**: *(that) he hoped*; i.e. Cicero hoped  
**eius**: *his*; i.e. Caesar's  
 4 **quae peti(v)erint**: *(the things) which*; pf. subj. of petō in a relative clause of characteristic, the missing antecedent is object of impetrātūrōs  
**impetrātūrōs (esse)**: *that (they) would attain*; fut. infinitive; supply Nervios as acc. subject  
 5 **vallō...fossā**: ablative of means  
**pedum**: *of feet*; gen. of measure  
 6 **haec**: *these things*; i.e. the vallum and fossa; object of cognōverant  
**et...et**: *both...and*  
**superiōrum**: *of previous*; comparative adj.  
**ab nōbīs**: *from us*; abl. of source, the Nervii had learned their siege strategies from the Romans  
 7 **quōs...docēbantur...ab eīs**: *and by those, whom they were holding from our army as captives*; the antecedent of the relative quōs is the demonstrative eīs; capitivōs is predicative  
**nullā...copiā**: *since there was...;* “(there being) no supply...”, the construction is either an abl. of means or an abl. absolute, causal in force  
 8 **esset**: *was*; impf. sum in a relative clause of characteristic  
**ad hunc ūsum**: *for...;* expressing purpose  
**gladiīs**: abl. of means  
 9 **circumcidere (et)...exhaurire**: asyndeton, supply conjunction immediately after first inf., lack of conjunction suggests haste or speed  
**manibus sagulīsque**: abl. of means  
**vidēbantur**: *they seemed*; + complementary inf.; ‘seem’ is a common translation for videor  
**quā...ex rē**: *from which matter*  
 10 **multitudō**: i.e. the size of the population, the number of Nervii  
**cognoscī**: pres. inf.  
**minus hōrīs tribus**: *in less than three hours*; comparative adv. + abl. of comparison; the time construction is abl. of time within  
 11 **mīlium pedum XV**: *15,000 feet*; “15 of thousands of feet” gen. of measure  
**reliquis diēbus**: *within...;* abl. time within  
 12 **ad altitudinem vallī**: *(in proportion) to...;* the turrēs are as tall as the vallā  
**idem**: eīdem, nom. pl. with captivī; see line 7  
 14 **Septimō...diē**: *on...;* abl. time when  
**maximō coōrtō ventō**: abl. absolute  
**ferventēs**: modifies glandēs; pres. pple acc. pl.  
**fusilī**: modifies argillā; abl. sg., i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl.  
 15 **glandēs**: *bullets*; “acorns,” this is the projectile shot from a sling (funda)  
**fervefacta iacula**: *heated javelins*; acc. d.o.  
 16 **erant tēctae**: tectae erant, plpf. pass. tegō  
**hae**: *these (houses)*; supply casae  
 17 **comprehendērunt**: *caught*  
**ventī**: nom. pl. subject  
**magnitudīne**: *because of...;* abl. of cause  
 18 **distulērunt**: pf. 3<sup>rd</sup> pl. differō

#### Subjunctive Conditions In Secondary Sequence: Direct and Indirect Discourse

##### Fut. Less Vivid (pres. subj., pres. subj.)

dixī “sī credās, errēs.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrū esse  
 I said, “if you should believe, you would be wrong” I said that, if you were to believe, you would be...

##### Present Contrary-to-fact (impf. subj., impf. subj.)

dixī “sī crederēs, errārēs.” → dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrū esse  
 I said, “if you believed, you would be wrong” I said that, if you believed, you would be wrong.\*

##### Past Contrary-to-fact (plpf. subj. plpf. subj.)

dixī “sī credissēs, errāvissēs.” → dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrū fuisse.  
 I said, “if you had believed, you would have been...” I said that, if you had believed, you would have...

for more, see p. 84



4.3 Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs 1  
 testudinēsque agere et scallīs vallum ascendere coepērunt. 4. At tanta mīlitum  
 virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur  
 maximāque tēlorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta  
 atque omnēs fortunās cōnflagrāre intellegent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā 5  
 dē vallō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum  
 omnēs ācerimē fortissimēque pugnārent. 5. Hic diēs nostrīs longē  
 gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus  
 numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vallō  
 constīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. 6. Paulum quidem 10  
 intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adactā et contingente vāllum tertiae  
 cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt sudōsque omnēs  
 removērunt, nūtū vocibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt;  
 quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. 7. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs  
 dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est. 15

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2  
 adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive to, force to, 1  
 agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, do, 4  
 ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: ascend, mount 2  
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 4  
 centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4  
 clāmōr, clāmōris m.: shout, cry, 2  
 coepī, coepisse, coeptum: to begin, 9  
 cōnflagrō (1): be on fire, be consumed, 1  
 constīpō (1): to crowd together in, stuff, 1  
 contingō, -ere, tīgī, tactum: touch, border, 1  
 dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, die, 4  
 dēmigrō (1): to emigrate, depart, 1  
 dēturbō (1): dislodge, drive off, 1  
 ēventus, -ūs m.: consequence, result, issue, 2  
 explorō (1): explore, search; gain, 1  
 flamma, ae f.: flame, 3  
 fortuna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4  
 iam: now, already, soon, 4  
 intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum: understand, 2  
 introeō, -īre, ī, -itum: go into, enter, 1  
 lapis, lapidīs m.: stone, 1  
 modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 4

nēmō, nūllius, nēmīnī, -em, nūllō: no one, 3  
 nūtus, -ūs m.: a nod, 1  
 paene: almost, nearly, 2  
 pariō, -ere, peperī, partum: produce, bear, 1  
 praesentia, -ae f.: presence, 2  
 prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus: step forward,  
 go forth, advance, 2  
 quīdam, quaedam, quiddam: a certain, 4  
 quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything? 2  
 recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus: go back, 1  
 recessus, -ūs m.: retreat, recess, 1  
 removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 2  
 respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look back to, 1  
 scāla, -ae f.: ladder; flight of stairs, stairs, 1  
 sicut: just as, so as, as if, 2  
 stō, -āre, steti, stātum: stand still, stop, 3  
 succēdō, -ere, -dī, census: to set fire under, 2  
 testūdō, -tūdīnis f.: tortoise, 2  
 torreō, -ēre, -rui, tostum: burn, parch, 1  
 ultimus, -a, -um: farthest, extreme, last, 1  
 vōcō (1): call, name, address, summon, 1  
 vōx, vōcis, f.: voice; utterance, word, 4  
 vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

- 1 **maximō clāmōre**: with a very loud shout; abl. of manner, cum is dropped with the noun is modified by an adjective  
**sicutī**: as if...  
**partā...atque explorātā**: produced and confirmed; PPP in an ablative absolute; pariō is the verb "to give birth" and explorō, in addition to the meaning "to search out" means "fixed," "established" or "confirmed" in Caesar  
2 **agere**: to drive forward  
**mīlitum**: of (our) soldiers; i.e. the Romans  
3 **ea praesentia animī**: and such was their presence of mind; i.e. discipline and focus  
**ut...nōn modo...dēcēderet, sed...respiceret ...pugnārent**: (so) that...; result clause; impf. subjunctives in secondary sequence  
**cum...**: although...; cum-clause is concessive  
4 **torrērentur...premerentur**: were being scorched and...were being overwhelmed; impf. subj. in the same cum-clause  
**sua**: their; reflexive adjective  
5 **impedīmenta atque...fortunās**: acc. subj. of cōnflagrāre, ind. disc. governed by intellegent  
**fortunās**: personal items  
**nōn modo...sed**: not only...but (also)  
6 **dēmigrandī causā**: for the sake of...; gen. sg. gerund dēmigrō  
**nē...quidem**: not even; this construction emphasizes the intervening word, in this case respiceret, which is part of the result clause that started with ut in line 3  
7 **ācerimē fortissimēque**: superlative adverbs  
8 **nostrīs**: for our (men); dat. of interest  
**longē**: far, by far; adverb  
**gravissimus**: most grievous; pred. adjective  
**hunc...ēventum, ut**: this result, (namely) that...; ut introduces a noun result clause in apposition to ēventum  
**eō diē**: on this day; eō is a demonstrative  
9 **ut...constīpāverant...dabant**: since...; ut + indicative, "as" is causal in force  
**sub**: at the foot of...; "beneath"  
10 **prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant**: the last (soldiers) were not giving (a means for) retreat to the first; the rows of soldiers were crowded together on the battle line so that the soldiers on the front were pushed by those behind and could not retreat  
**paulum**: a little; adverbial acc.  
11 **intermissā flammā**: abl. absolute  
**quōdam locō**: in a certain place; abl. place where; or "to..."dative with compound verb  
**turrī adactā et contingente**: abl. abs., turrī is fem. i-stem abl.; PPP adigō; pres. ppl. contingō; the turrī is an enemy's tower  
12 **tertiae cohortis**: gen. sg. modifies centuriōnēs  
**ex eō...locō**: from this place; demonstrative  
**quō**: in which (place); abl. of place where  
13 **sudōsque omnēs**: all their men; acc. d.o.  
**nūtū vocibusque**: with a nod and words; abl. of means  
**sī...vellent**: if they wished; ind. discourse, impf. subjunctive; in direct discourse a pres. indicative: "if you wish to enter, (enter)!"  
14 **quōrum...nēmō**: none of whom; partitive gen.  
**prōgredi**: present deponent inf., prōgredior  
**ausus est**: dared; pf. deponent, audeō is a semi-deponent verb, otherwise active, the perfect tenses are deponent  
**ex omnī parte**: from every direction  
15 **dēturbātī (sunt)**: (the enemy) was dislodged; pf. passive, add "sunt" parallel with succēnsa  
**turris**: nom. sg. feminine

#### Purpose Constructions

There are a variety of ways to express purpose in Caesar's *Commentaries*. Notice how Caesar uses purpose clauses (adverbial and relative) in early books and other constructions in later ones. The dat. of purpose is often used with *sum* or with dat. interest in a double dative construction.

			<u>examples</u>
<b>ut/nē</b> + subj.	ut/nē audīret	<i>so that he might (not) hear...</i>	pp. 4, 6, 8, 10, 46, 70
<b>quī</b> + subj.	quī audīret	<i>who should hear...</i>	pp. 10
<b>ad</b> + gerund	ad haec audiendum	<i>for hearing...</i>	p. 10, 18
<b>ad</b> + noun + gerundive	ad haec audienda	<i>for these things to be heard</i>	pp. 2-8, 10, 18-20, 24
<b>causā</b> + gerund	audiendī causā	<i>for (the sake of) hearing...</i>	pp. 28, 40, 62
<b>causā</b> + gerundive	audiendī huius causā	<i>for the sake of this to be heard</i>	pp. 20, 58, 68
<b>accusative supine</b>	audītum	<i>to hear...</i>	pp. 22, 38, 52
<b>dative of purpose</b>	salūtī	<i>for safety</i>	p. 12, 18-20, 38-44, 52, 64-6

44.1 Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī p̄mīs ōrdinibus 1  
 appropinquārent, Titus Pullō et Lucius Vorēnus. 2. Hī perpetuās inter sē  
 contrōversiās habēbant, quānam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locīs  
 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. 3. Ex hīs Pullō, cum acerrimē ad  
 mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, ‘Quid dubitās,’ inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum 5  
 tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? 4. Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs  
 iudicābit.’ Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaeque pars  
 hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa irrupit. 5. Nē Vorēnus quidem tum sēsē vallō  
 continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. 6. Mediocrī spatīo  
 relictō, Pullō p̄lum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudine 10  
 prōcurrentem traicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt, in  
 hostem tēla ūniversī coniciunt neque dant regrediendī facultātem. 7.  
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullonī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. 8. Āvertit hic  
 casus vāgīnam, et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum,  
 impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. 9. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et 15  
 laborantī subvenit. 10. Ad hunc sē confestim ā Pullone omnis multītūdō  
 convertit: 11. illum verūto arbitrantur occīsum. Gladiō comminus rem gerit  
 Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; 12. dum cupidius  
 īnstāt, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō fert  
 subsidium Pullō, 13. atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā 20  
 cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. 14. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et  
 certāmine utrumque versāvīt, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtique esset,  
 neque dīiudicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce, eager, bitter 2  
 ambo: both, two together, 1  
 anteferō, -ferre, -tuli: prefer, carry before, 2  
 appropinquō (1): approach, draw near (dat), 3  
 auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 3  
 āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversum: turn away, 1  
 balteus, -ī m.: belt, baldric; girdle, 1  
 centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion, 4  
 certāmen, -minis n.: contest, conflict, 1  
 circumsistō, -ere, -steti: to surround, 2  
 comminus: hand to hand, in close combat, 1  
 concidō, -ere, -cidi, -casum: to fall, 1  
 confertus, a, um: crowded together, dense, 3  
 cōnfestim: immediately, 4  
 contendō, -ere, -i, -ntus: strive; hasten, 4  
 contentiō, -iōnis f.: struggle, effort, 1  
 convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (about), 1  
 cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 2  
 dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum: fasten, stick fast, 1  
 dēiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum: throw down 2  
 dexter, -tera, -terum: right, the right hand, 1

dīiudicō (1): judge, decide (by fighting), 1  
 dubitō (1): waver, be uncertain, hesitate, 1  
 ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus: lead out, 3  
 exanimō (1): deprive of breath; kill, stun, 2  
 existimātiō, -iōnis f.: judgment, opinion, 1  
 exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3  
 extrā: outside; beyond, outside of (acc), 1  
 fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4  
 gladius, -ī m.: sword, 3  
 immittō, -ere, -misi, -missum: launch into, 1  
 impeditus, -a, -um: hindered, impeded, 3  
 incolumis, -e: unscathed, uninjured, safe, 2  
 inferus, -a, -um: below, lower, 3  
 inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 4  
 inquam: say, 4  
 īnstō, -āre, -stitī, press on, take a position, 1  
 intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 3  
 irrupō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 1  
 iudicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 2  
 labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive, 2  
 laus, laudis f.: praise, adulation, 1

mediocris, -e: moderate, ordinary, 1  
 moror, -ārī, -ātus: delay, linger; detain, 3  
 occidō, -ere, occidi, occisus: kill, cut down 4  
 percutiō, -ere, -cussi, cussum: strike hard, 1  
 perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting, 4  
 pilum, -ī n.: pilum, javelin, 3  
 prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 3  
 prōcurrō, -ere, curri, cursum: run forward, 2  
 prōpellō, -ere, -pelli, -pulsus: drive forward  
 or push away, 3  
 prōtegō, -ere, texī, tectum: to cover over, 1  
 quānam quāenam quodnam: which, what, 1  
 regredior, -ī, regressus: step or go back 1  
 rursus: again, backward, back, 4  
 scūtum, -ī m.: shield, 2  
 sic: thus, in this way, 3

simultās, -tātis f.: clash, feud, rivalry, 1  
 spatium, -ī n.: space, room, extent, 4  
 subveniō, -īre, -veni, -ventum: come up to,  
 aid, relieve, 2  
 succurrō, -ere, : run under, undergo, occur, 1  
 Titus, -ī m.: Titus, 4  
 traiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum: pierce, cast across, 2  
 transfigō, -ere, -fixī, fixum: pierce, thrust, 1  
 tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 1  
 ūniversus, -a, -um: all together, whole, 3  
 uter, utra, utrum: each or one (of two), 2  
 vāgīna, -ae f.: sheath, scabbard, 1  
 vereor, -ērī, -itus sum: be afraid, fear; revere, 4  
 versor (1): be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3  
 verūtum, -ī n.: javelin, 2  
 vir, virī m.: man, 4

1 Erant: there were...

p̄mīs ōrdinibus: the front ranks; in battle  
 at regular intervals the front row was relieved  
 by the second row and slipped to the rear; Pullo  
 and Vorenus are about take over the first row  
 3 quānam anteferrētur: who was to be preferred;  
 “who was better,” an ind. question in apposition  
 to contrōversiās, likely impf. deliberative subj.  
 omnibusque annīs: every year; abl. time when  
 dē locīs summīs: concerning the highest  
 positions; i.e. military promotions and honors  
 4 simultātibus: in...; abl. of respect  
 ācerrimē: superlative adverb  
 ad: near

5 Quid: Why...?

pugnārētur: they were fighting; “it was fought  
 (by them),” an impersonal impf. passive  
 Vorēne: Vorenus; vocative direct address  
 quem locum: what (better) place; i.e. “what  
 better opportunity” relative adjective

6 tuae probandae virtūtis: of proving your  
 valor; “of your valor going to be proven,” a  
 gerundive modifying virtūtis; through a gerund-  
 gerundive flip a gerund with virtūtis as object  
 7 haec: these things; acc. obj. of plpf. subj. dicō;  
 Pullo is the subject of all the following verbs  
 quaeque pars...est vīsa: and what(ever) side  
 seemed...; videor, here pf. pass. is translated as  
 the linking verb “seems,” missing antecedent is  
 the object of irrupit

8 cōnfertissima: superlative pred. adj. governed  
 by vīsa est and modifying the feminine sg. pars  
 nē...quidem: not even...; this construction  
 emphasizes the intervening word  
 vallō: within the wall; abl. place where

9 veritus: having come to fear...; pf. dep. pple

omnium existimātiōnem: object of veritus  
 mediocrī spatīo relictō: a usual interval (of  
 time) having been forsaken; i.e. a short time,  
 having intervened; abl. absolute, i-stem abl.

10 in hostēs: against the enemy  
 ūnum: one (enemy soldier)

11 prōcurrentem: pres. pple. modifies ūnum  
 quō percussō et exanimātō: this one...; abl.  
 abs. with PPP percutiō, exanimō; a relative  
 where English prefers a demonstrative  
 hunc: this one; hunc refers to the same as quō  
 12 regrediendī: gerund, gen. sg. regredior  
 13 Pullonī: Pullo’s; dat. poss. or dat. of interest  
 hic casus: this event; the scabbard is turned in  
 such a way that it is difficult to draw a sword

14 gladium ēdūcere cōnantī: for the one  
 trying...; pres. pple cōnōr

15 illī, laborantī: dat. objects of compound verbs

17 illum occīsum (esse): that that one was killed

18 ūnō interfectō: abl. absolute

cupidius: comparative adverb, cupidus

19 īnstāt: presses on; “takes a stand”

dēiectus: having slipped onto a lower ground

huic...circumventō: to this one...; dat. i.o.

21 sēsē...recipiunt: retreat; common idiom

22 utrumque versāvīt: engaged in both men  
 ut...esset, posset, vidērētur: result clause

alter alterī inimīcus: one, hostile to the other,  
 auxiliō salūtique esset: would serve as help  
 and refuge; “for...,” dat. purpose

23 uter utrī: each one to the other; dat. sg.

virtūte: in valor; abl. of respect

anteferendus: to be preferred; “going/worthy  
 to be preferred” gerundive, a predicate of the  
 linking verb vidērētur, “seemed” cf. line 3

45.1 Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod 1  
magnā parte militum cōfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitatem defensōrum  
pervēnerat, tantō crebriōrēs litterae nūntiōque ad Caesarem mittēbantur;  
quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in conspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū  
necabātur. 2. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, 5  
quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem  
praestiterat. 3. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiīs, ut  
litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 4. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter  
Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. 5. Ab eō dē  
periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur. 10

46.1 Caesar, acceptīs litterīs, hōrā circiter XI diē statim nūntium in  
Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eō  
milia passuum XXV; 2. iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficiscī celeriterque ad  
sē venīre. 3. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium lēgātum  
mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum 15  
sciēbat. 4. Scribit Labiēnō, sī reī publicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne  
ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat  
longius, non putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs  
hibernīs colligit.

**addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum:** draw/lead to, 4  
**asper, aspera, asperum:** rough, harsh, violent, 1  
**Atrebas, Atrebātis, m.:** Atrebatēs, 3  
**Bellovacī, -ōrum m.:** Bellovacī (in Belgīs), 1  
**colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum:** gather, collect, 1  
**commodum, -i n.:** convenience, advantage, interest, 1  
**conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, 4  
**conspectus, -ūs, m.:** look, sight, view, 2  
**creber, -bra, -bum:** crowded, frequent, 1  
**cruciātus, -ūs m.:** torture, torment, 2  
**dēfensor, -ōris m.:** defender, protector, 1  
**dēprehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus:** seize, catch, 1  
**effero, -ferre, -tulī, -ēlātus:** raise, lift up 4  
**exeo, -ire, -ī (ivī), -itus:** go out, 4  
**expectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**Fabius, -i m.:** Fabius, 3  
**fidēs, ei f.:** faith, honor, 4  
**Gaius, -i m.:** Gaius, 4  
**honestus, -a, -um:** respectable, honorable, 1  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**iaculum, -i n.:** javelin, dart, 2  
**illigō, -āre, -āvī, illigātum:** tie or bind on, 1

**intus:** within, inside, 1  
**libertās, -tātis f.:** freedom, liberation, 2  
**M.:** Marcus, 3  
**medius -a -um:** in the middle of, 3  
**nascor, nascī, nātus sum:** be born, grow, 3  
**necō (1):** kill, slay, destroy, 1  
**nōmen, nōminis n.:** name, 2  
**obsidiō, -iōnis f.:** siege, blockade, 2  
**paucitās, -tātis f. (1):** fewness, scarcity, 3  
**perfugio, -ere, -fūgī:** flee, take refuge, 1  
**putō (1):** to think, imagine, 3  
**quadringenti:** four hundred, 2  
**quaestor, -ōris m.:** quaestor, 3  
**sciō, -ire, -ivī (ivī), -itus:** know (how), 2  
**scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum:** write, 2  
**servus, -i, m.:** slave, 1  
**statim:** immediately, at once, 4  
**suspicio, -ciōnis f.:** mistrust, suspicion, 4  
**versor (1):** be engaged in, move about, deal with, 3  
**Verticō, -ōnis m.:** Vertico, 1  
**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 3

- 1 **Quantō...gravior...tantō crebriōrēs:** *the more grievous...the more frequent*; “by as much...by so much,” correlatives, ablative of the degree of difference with comparative adjective  
**in diēs:** *daily*  
**maximē:** *especially*; “very greatly”  
**magnā...vulneribus:** ablative absolute  
3 **pervēnerat:** *had arrived at*; rēs is subject  
**nūntiī:** *messengers*  
**quōrum pars:** *some of which (messengers)*; partitive gen.,  
4 **dēprehēnsa:** *taken*; modifies fem. sg. pars  
5 **Erat:** *there was*  
**intus:** *within*; i.e. within Cicero’s camp  
**nōmine:** *by name*; “in name,” abl. of respect  
**locō...honestō:** *in an honorable station*; status et: *to him*; i.e. to Cicero, dat. sg.  
6 **praestiterat:** *had shown, had performed*  
7 **Hic:** *this one*; i.e. Vertico  
**servō:** *slave*; dat. i.o. of persuādeō  
**spē, praemiīs:** abl. means  
**ut...dēferat:** *that...;* ind. command with present subj. governed by persuādet  
8 **ille:** *that one*; i.e. the slave  
**hās:** *these*; fem. pl. antecedent litterae  
**Gallus...versātus:** *as a Gaul engaged...*  
9 **ab eō:** *by him*; by the slave, abl. of agent  
10 **cognōscitur:** *he learned*; “it is known by him”  
11 **acceptīs litterīs:** abl. absolute  
**hōrā...XI:** *at around the 11<sup>th</sup> hour*; time when, approximately 5 p.m.  
**diē:** partitive genitive  
12 **cuius:** gen. relative pronoun quī, quae, quod  
**aberant ab eō:** *were...away from him*; i.e.

from Caesar

13 **milia passuum XXV:** *25 miles*; “thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space  
**mediā nocte:** abl. of time when  
**proficiscī:** pres. deponent inf.

14 **cum nūntiō:** *with the messenger*; or “with (the arrival of) the message”

**Alterum:** *another*; modifies lēgātum

15 **ut...adducat:** *that...;* ind. command with pres. subj.

**finēs:** *territory*

**quā:** *where*

**sibi iter faciendum (esse):** *that a journey had to be made by him*; “a journey was going to be made by him” ind. discourse, a passive periphrastic (gerundive + form of sum) with dat. of agent expressing necessity or obligation

16 **Labiēnō:** dat. i.o.

**sī...posset:** *if*; impf. subj. possum

**reī publicae commodō:** *for the interest of the republic*; dat. purpose or, if reī is dat. not gen., double dative (dat. of interest & dat. purpose)

**(ut) cum legiōne veniat:** *that...;* ind. command with pres. subj. governed by scribit

**finēs:** *territory*

17 **exercitūs:** gen. sg.

**paulō:** *a little*; “by a little,” abl. degree of difference with comparative longius

18 **longius:** *farther*; comparative adverb  
**expectandam (esse):** *must be waited for*; “is going to be waited for,” passive periphrastic (gerundive + esse) expresses obligation or necessity; add esse, in indirect disc. governed by putat; fem. sg. partem is acc. subject

#### Compound Verbs: the Importance of Prefixes

Notice how the spelling of many prefixes, especially ad- and con-, change through assimilation and assume the consonant at the begins of the verb. Compounds often govern a dative instead of an accusative object.

a/ab-	away from	<b>mittō, -ere:</b> send, 20	<b>cēdō, ere:</b> withdraw, move, 2
ad-	to, toward	<b>amittō:</b> lose, let go away, 2	<b>accēdō:</b> approach, 5
con-	together with	<b>admittō:</b> admit, allow, 2	<b>concedō:</b> withdraw, yield, 2
dē-	from, down from	<b>committō:</b> begin, entrust, 4	<b>decēdō:</b> depart, withdraw, 4
dis-	different directions	<b>dēmittō:</b> send down, sink, 1	<b>discēdō:</b> go away, depart, 9
ē/ex-	out from	<b>dimitto:</b> send away, 3	<b>excēdō:</b> go out, depart, 3
in-	in, on, into	<b>ēmittō:</b> send off, 1	<b>incēdō:</b> walk, march, 0
inter-	between	<b>immittō:</b> launch into, 1	<b>intercēdō:</b> come between, 1
per-	through	<b>intermittō:</b> interrupt, leave off, 5	
prae-	before, ahead	<b>permittō:</b> let through, allow, 0	<b>praecedō:</b> surpass, go ahead, 1
pro-	forth, in advance	<b>praemittō:</b> send ahead, 2	<b>prōcedō:</b> go forth, 3
re-	back, again	<b>prōmittō:</b> send forth, undertake, 0	<b>recēdō:</b> go back, withdraw, 1
sub-	(up from) under	<b>remittō:</b> send back, 4	<b>succēdō:</b> go up, approach, 3
		<b>submitto:</b> send up, 1	

47.1 Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō 1  
diē milia passuum XX procēdit. 2. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit  
legiōnemque attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum,  
litterās publicās frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā 5  
dēvexerat relinquebat. 3. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus  
in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. 4. Labiēnus, interitū Sabīnī et caede  
cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Treverōrum cōpiaē vēnissent,  
veritus, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, ut hostium  
impetum sustinēre posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret,  
litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus 10  
esset; rem gestam in Eburionibus perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs  
peditātūsque cōpiās Treverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suis castrīs  
cōnsēdisse.

**antecursor, -ōris m.:** scout, advanced guard, 1  
**attribuō, -ere, -uī, -utum:** allot, assign to, add, 1  
**caedēs, caedis f.:** murder, slaughter, killing 2  
**considēō, -ēre, -sēdī:** to sit down, settle, 2  
**dēvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum:** carry away, 1  
**doceō, -ēre, -uī, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus:** lead out, 3  
**efferrē, -ferre, -tulī, -ēlātus:** raise, lift up 4  
**Fabius, -i m.:** Fabius, 3  
**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 3  
**hiems, hiemis f.:** winter, storm, 4  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 4  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 7  
**interitus, -ūs m.:** destruction, annihilation, 1  
**ita:** so, thus, 7  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus:** delay, linger; detain, 3

**occurrō, -ere:** run to meet, attack, 2  
**peditātus, -ūs m.:** infantry, 3  
**perscribō, -ere, -scripsī:** describe thoroughly, 1  
**praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** set (acc) over (dat),  
put (acc) in charge over (dat), 2  
**praesertim:** especially, particularly, 2  
**procēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** proceed, 3  
**recens, recentis adj.:** new, fresh, recent, 1  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send back, 4  
**Samarobrīva, -ae f.:** Samarobriva, 2  
**sciō, -ire, -ivī (it), -itus:** know (how), 2  
**similis, simile:** similar to, like (dat.), 1  
**tolerō (I):** endure, sustain, bear, support, 1  
**Trēveri, -ōrum m.:** Treveri (Germanic), 4  
**vereor, -ērī, -itus:** be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **Hōrā...tertiā:** *at...*; abl. of time when  
**ab antecursōribus:** abl. of agent  
**certior factus:** *having been informed*; “having  
been made more certain,” a common idiom in  
Caesar, certior is a comparative adj., here a  
predicate of PPP of faciō  
2 **eō diē:** *on that day*; time when, demonstrative  
**milia passuum XX:** *for 20 miles*; “twenty  
thousands of paces,” acc. of extent of space  
**praeficit:** *put (acc) in charge over (dat.)*  
3 **quod:** *because...*  
4 **quod...dēvexerat:** *which...*; relative pronoun,  
frūmentum is the antecedent  
**eō: to there;** “to that place,” adverb  
**tolerandae hiemis:** gerund-gerundive flip,  
translate the gerundive as a gerund and gen.  
hiemis as an acc. object of tolerandae; the entire  
construction is an obj. of the preposition causā  
5 **ut:** *as;* ut + indicative, as often “as” or “when”  
**imperātum erat:** *it...*; impersonal plpf. pass.  
**multum:** *much;* inner acc. or adverbial acc.  
6 **interitū...cognitā:** abl. absolute  
7 **cum...vēnisset:** *when...*; plpf. subjunctive  
**cōpiaē:** *troops;* modified by omnēs  
8 **veritus...ut...posset:** *having begun to fear that  
he would not be able;* inceptive pf. dep. pple  
vereor governs a fearing clause (nē - that, ut -  
that not) with impf. subj. in secondary seq.  
**fugae:** *to flight;* governed by similem  
8 **sī...fēcisset:** *if he had made;* plpf. subjunctive,  
introducing a mixed contrafactual condition  
9 **quōs...scīret:** *since he knew that those were  
elated by their recent victory;* quōs + impf.  
subjunctive is a relative clause causal in sense,  
equivalent to a cum-clause (quōs = cum eōs)  
causal in sense; cf. quī in V.33; pass. inf. efferō  
**recentī:** i-stem ablative with victōriā  
10 **quantō...periculō:** *(stating) with how much  
danger...*; introducing an ind. question with  
an implicit verb of speaking in “litterās...  
remittit”  
**ēductūrus esset:** *would lead out;* “was going  
to lead out,” fut. periphrastic (future pple +  
sum) in primary sequence which in dir. disc  
would be “ēductūrus erat”  
11 **gestam:** *carried out;* PPP gerō  
**in Eburionibus:** *among the Eburiones*  
**omnēs...cōpiās:** *that all...*; acc. subject of pf.  
infinitive cōnsēdisse in ind. discourse  
12 **tria milia passuum:** *three miles;* “three  
thousand paces,” acc. of extent of space  
**longē:** *far;* adverb

#### Deponent Verbs in the Readings

- agredior, -ī, aggressus sum:** attack, 1  
**ēgredior, -ī, -gressum:** go out, disembark, 5  
**regredior, -ī, regressum:** step or go back 1  
**adipiscor, -ī, adeptum:** get, obtain, reach, 1  
**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātum:** to judge, 10  
**auxilior, -ārī, auxiliātum:** to help, assist, 1  
**confiteor, -ērī, -fessum:** admit, reveal, 1  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātum:** to try, 6  
**cunctor, -ārī, -ātum:** to delay, hesitate 1  
**frūmentor, -ārī:** to forage, fetch corn, 1  
**hortor, -ārī, hortātum:** encourage, urge, 2  
**adhortor, -ārī, -ātum:** encourage, urge on, 1  
**cohortor, -ārī, cohortātum:** encourage, incite, 3  
**lābor, lābī, lapsum:** glide, slide, slip, 1  
**loquor, -ī, locūtum:** speak, say, 2  
**colloquor, -quī, -locūtum:** to converse, 4  
**medeor, -ērī:** heal, cure; assist, alleviate, 1  
**mercior, -ārī, mercātum:** to trade, traffic, 1  
**moderor, -ārī, -ātum:** restrain, regulate, 1  
**molior, -īrī, molitum:** set into motion, stir, 1  
**moror, -ārī, -ātum:** delay, linger; detain, 3  
**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactum:** obtain, meet, 1  
**nascor, nascī, nātum:** be born, grow, 3  
**nitor, nīrī, nīsus sum:** to struggle, lean on, 1  
**contestor, -ārī, -ātum:** to call as witness, 1  
**orior, -īrī, ortum:** arise, rise, spring, 3  
**adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum:** rise up, attack, 2  
**coōrior, -īrī, coōrtum:** arise, break out, 2  
**patior, -ī, passum:** suffer, endure; allow, 2  
**polliceor, -cērī, -cītum:** promise, offer, 2  
**potior, -īrī, -itum:** gain, win (*abl.*), 2  
**proelior, -ārī, -ātum:** to give battle, fight, 1  
**proficiscor, -ī, -fectum:** set out, depart, 23  
**profiteor, -ērī, -fessum:** profess, declare, 1  
**prosequor, sequī, secūtum:** follow, pursue 1  
**queror, querī, questum:** complain, lament, 1  
**sequor, -ī, secūtum:** follow, pursue, 4  
**consequor, -ī, secūtum:** follow; pursue 1  
**exsequor, sequī, secūtum:** follow/carry out 1  
**insequor, -sequī, -secūtum:** follow, ensue, 1  
**subsequor, -ī, secūtum:** follow after, behind 7  
**suspicior, -ārī, suspiciātum:** to suspect, 3  
**ulciscor, -ī, ultum:** avenge, take vengeance 1  
**ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum:** use, employ (*abl.*), 5  
**vagor, -ārī, -ātum:** wander, roam to and fro, 1  
**vereor, -ērī, -itum:** be afraid, fear; revere, 4



48.1 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad 1  
 duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxiliū in celeritāte ponēbat.  
 Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviorū finēs. 2. Ibi ex captivīs cognoscit, quae  
 apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in periculō rēs sit. 3. Tum cuidam ex  
 equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam 5  
 dēferat. 4. Hanc Graecīs conscriptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistolā,  
 nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. 5. Sī adire non possit, monet ut  
 trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum deligātā intrā mūnitiōnem castrōrum  
 abiciat. 6. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore;  
 hortātur ut pristīnam virtūtem retineat. 7. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat 10  
 praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. 8. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs  
 bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur, dempta ad  
 Cicerōnem dēfertur. 9. Ille perlectam in conventū militum recitat  
 maximāque omnēs laetitīā adfcit. 10. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul  
 vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit. 15

**abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw away, 2  
**adeō, -ire, ī(v)ī, itus:** approach, encounter, 2  
**adfcio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** affect, afflict, 3  
**adhaereō, -ēre, -haesī:** cling to, stick to, 1  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, (dat.), 3  
**āmentum, -ī n.:** strap, leather thong, 1  
**auxilium, -ī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 3  
**biduum, -ī n.:** a period of two days, 2  
**captivus, -a, -um:** prisoner, captive, 3  
**conscribō, -ere, -scripsī:** enlist, enroll, 2  
**conspiciō, -ire:** catch sight of, perceive, behold 1  
**conventus, -ūs m.:** meeting, assembly, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, give out, 3  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw down, dislodge, 1  
**dēligō (1):** to tie down, fasten, 2  
**dēmō, -ere, dempsī, demptum:** take down, 1  
**dubitātiō, -tiōnis f.:** wavering, uncertainty, 1  
**epistula, -ae f.:** letter, missive, 3  
**expellō, ere, puli, pulsum:** drive out, expel 2  
**fūmus, -ī m.:** smoke, vapor, steam, 1

**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 2  
**hortor, -āri, hortātum:** encourage, urge, 2  
**incendium, -ī n.:** fire, conflagration, 1  
**incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptum:** begin, 1  
**intrā:** within, among (+ acc.), 3  
**laetitia, -ae f.:** gladness, joy, delight, 1  
**monēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** to warn, advise, 2  
**opiniō, -niōnis f.:** opinion, thought, belief, 2  
**perlegō, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum:** survey, scan, 1  
**praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum:** receive in  
 advance, instruct, admonish, 2  
**pristinus, -a, -um:** former, previous, earlier 2  
**procul:** far, from a distance, from afar, 3  
**quidam, quaedam, quiddam:** a certain, 4  
**recitō (1):** recite, read aloud, 1  
**redeō, -ire, -ivī:** go back, return, 1  
**retineō, -ēre, -uī, tentum:** hold back, keep, 2  
**scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum:** write, 2  
**trāgula, -ae f.:** tragula (a Gallic javelin) 3  
**vereor, -ēri, -itus:** be afraid, fear; revere, 4

- 1 **cōnsiliō...probātō:** abl. absolute  
**etsī:** even if...; i.e. although  
**opiniōne:** from the hope for...; “from the  
 thought,” abl. of separation; Caesar had  
 hoped for three legions but received only two  
**dēiectus:** disappointed; i.e. dejected, dispirited
- 2 **duās:** duās legiōnēs  
**redierat:** plpf. redeō  
**ūnum...auxilium:** a single source
- 3 **magnīs itineribus:** in long marches; i.e. forced  
 marches; 25-30 miles per day  
**finēs:** borders  
**quae...gerantur:** what (things) are carried on;  
 ind. question with pres. subjunctive
- 4 **apud Cicerōnem:** in Cicero’s camp  
**quantō in...:** in how great...; cf. p. 68, (V.47.4)  
 ind. question with pres. subj. of sum  
**cuidam:** a certain...; cui-dam, dat. indirect obj.  
 quōdam of persuādet
- 5 **utī...dēferat:** that...; utī is an alternative to ut,  
 here in an indirect command governed by  
 persuādeō; pres. subj. dēferō
- 6 **hanc:** this (letter)  
**Graecīs...litterīs:** with Greek letters; in Greek  
 or perhaps Latin in Greek script  
**nē...cognōscantur:** that...may not...; negative  
 purpose clause; pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 7 **possit:** he is able; a subordinate clause in ind.  
 discourse, replacing indicative with pres. subj.  
**ut...abiciat:** that...; ind. command governed  
 by monet; pres. subj. in primary sequence
- 8 **āmentum:** a leather loop on a javelin that  
 allows for better aim and distance when the  
 javelin is thrown
- 9 **sē...adfore:** that he will be present...; adfore is  
 an alternative for adfutūrum esse, fut. inf. of  
 adsum  
**profectum:** PPP proficīscor
- 10 **ut...retineat:** that...; ind. command  
**veritus:** having begun to fear; inceptive pf.  
 dep. pple vereor governs periculum as object  
**ut erat praeceptum:** as it had been  
 instructed; ut + indicative
- 11 **mittit:** launches; i.e. throws  
**haec:** this (javelin); supply nom. sg. trāgula  
**cāsū:** by chance
- ab nostrīs:** by our (men); abl. agent
- 12 **bīduō:** in...; abl. time when or within  
**animadversa:** PPP modifying haec (trāgula)  
**tertiō diē:** abl. time when
- 13 **perlectam (epistulam)...recitat:** that one  
 recites the letter, once read through...;  
 English prefers two main verbs where Latin  
 often prefers to make the first of two actions  
 into a PPP: “that one read through the letter  
 and then recited it...”
- 14 **adfcit:** affects (acc) with (abl.); abl. means
- 15 **quae rēs:** a matter which...; quae modifies  
 fem. sg. rēs, the antecedent of the relative  
 clause, in apposition to fūmī (or the entire  
 clause)

### The Remainder of Book V

Cicero and his camp are hopeful when they see the fires as a sign of Caesar’s approach. Confronted with 60,000 Gauls, Caesar forms a camp. After a brief skirmish, he pretends to retreat into his fortifications, and when the Gauls follow him, he orders his cavalry and then his foot soldiers to rush out of the gates and attack the enemy. The Gauls are taken by surprise, and those who are not immediately killed flee into the nearby swamps and forests.

Caesar hastens to Cicero’s camp, where he learns that nine of every ten soldiers has been wounded in the siege. Caesar praises both Cicero and the legion and informs Cicero about the fate of Sabinus and Cotta’s legion and in particular the recklessness of Sabinus.

When Labienus, encamped 60 miles away, learns of Caesar’s victory, Indutiomarus, leader of the Treveri, initially decides to stop preparations to attack Labienus and to withdraw. But as other Gauls learn about Sabinus’ defeat and begin to make preparations to fight, Indutiomarus returns with a much larger force. With the aid of cavalry, Labienus is able to surprise the Gauls and kill Indutiomarus. After this episode the Gauls return to their homes, and the uprising comes to an end.



	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	copia	copiae	legatus	legatī	proelium	proelia
Gen.	copiae	copiārum	legatī	legatōrum	proeliī	proeliōrum
Dat.	copiae	copiīs	legatō	legatīs	proeliō	proeliīs
Acc.	copiam	copiās	legatum	legatōs	proelium	proelia
Abl.	copiā	copiīs	legatō	legatīs	proeliō	proeliīs

	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>	
Nom.	mīles	mīlites
Gen.	mīlitīs	mīlitum
Dat.	mīlitī	mīlitibus
Acc.	militem	mīlitēs
Abl.	mīlite	mīlitibus

	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>	
Nom.	manus	manūs
Gen.	manūs	manuum
Dat.	manū	manibus
Acc.	manum	manūs
Abl.	manū	manibus

	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>	
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	rēī	rērum
Dat.	rēī	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

**Selected Pronouns**

Nom.	is	he	ea	she	id	it
Gen.	eius	his	eius	her	eius	its
Dat.	eī	to/for him	eī	to/for her	eī	to/for it
Acc.	eum	him	eam	her	id	it
Abl.	eō	with/from him	eā	with/from her	eō	with/from it

Nom.	eī	they	eae	they	ea	they
Gen.	eōrum	their	eārum	their	eōrum	their
Dat.	eīs	to/for them	eīs	to/for them	eīs	to/for them
Acc.	eōs	them	eās	them	ea	them
Abl.	eīs	with/from them	eīs	with/from them	eīs	with/from them

\*is, ea, id is a demonstrative and in Caesar is often translated as "this/that" in the singular and "these/those" in the plural.

Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	who, which, that
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	whose, of whom/which
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	to whom/which
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	whom, which, that
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	by/with/from whom/which

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	that	hic	haec	hoc	this
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	of that	huius	huius	huius	of this
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	to/for that	huic	huic	huic	to/for this
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	that	hunc	hanc	hoc	this
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	with/from that	hōc	hāc	hōc	b/w/f this

Nom.	illī	illae	illa	those	hī	hae	haec	these
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	of those	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	of these
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	to those	hīs	hīs	hīs	to these
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	those	hōs	hās	haec	these
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	with/from those	hīs	hīs	hīs	with/from these

	reflexive pronoun	possessive reflexive adjective					
Nom.	---	suus	sua	suum	suī	suae	sua
Gen.	suī	suāe	suī	suōrum	suārum	suōrum	suōrum
Dat.	sibi	suō	suae	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs
Acc.	sē	suum	suam	suum	suōs	suās	sua
Abl.	sē	suō	suā	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs

**Adjectives and Adverbs**

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altus, -a, -um high (deep)	altior, altius higher (deeper)	altissimus, -a, -um highest, very high (deepest)
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortis, forte brave	fortior, fortius braver, more brave	fortissimus, -a, -um bravest, most brave, very brave
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altē deeply	altius more deeply	altissimē very deeply
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortiter bravely	fortius more bravely	fortissimē very bravely

**Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs**

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um good	melior, melius better	optimus, -a, -um best
magnus, -a, -um great	maior, maius greater	maximus, -a, -um greatest
parvus, -a, -um small	minor, minus smaller	minimus, -a, -um smallest
multus, -a, -um	---, plus	plurimus, -a, -um

<b>amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love</b>						
	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	amō	amāmus	<i>I love</i>	amor	amāmur	<i>I am (being) loved</i>
	amās	amātis		amāris	amāminī	
	amat	amant		amātur	amantur	
Impf.	amābam	amābāmus	<i>I was loving</i>	amābar	amābāmur	<i>I was (being) loved</i>
	amābās	amābātis		amābāris	amābāminī	
	amābat	amābant		amābātur	amābantur	
Fut.	amābō	amābimus	<i>I will love</i>	amābor	amābimur	<i>I will be loved</i>
	amābis	amābitis		amāberis	amābiminī	
	amābit	amābunt		amābitur	amābuntur	
Perf.	amāvī	amāvimus	<i>I have loved</i>	amāta sum	amātae sumus	<i>I have been loved</i>
	amāvisī	amāvistis		amāta es	amātae estis	<i>was loved</i>
	amāvit	amāvērunt		amāta est	amātae sunt	
Plpf.	amāveram	amāverāmus	<i>I had loved</i>	amāta eram	amātae erāmus	<i>I had been loved</i>
	amāverās	amāverātis		amāta erās	amātae erātis	
	amāverat	amāverant		amāta erat	amātae erant	
Fut. Pf.	amāverō	amāverimus	<i>I will have loved</i>	amāta erō	amātae erimus	<i>I will have been loved</i>
	amāveris	amāveritis		amāta eris	amātae eritis	
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta erit	amātae erunt	
<b>Subjunctive</b>						
Pres.	amem	amēmus	same as	amer	amēmur	same as
	amēs	amētis	indicative	amēris	amēminī	indicative
	amet	ament		ametur	amentur	
Impf.	amārem	amārēmus		amārer	amārēmur	
	amārēs	amārētis		amārēris	amārēminī	
	amāret	amārent		amāretur	amārentur	
Perf.	amāverim	amāverīmus		amāta sim	amātae sīmus	
	amāveris	amāveritis		amāta sis	amātae sītis	
	amāverit	amāverint		amāta sit	amātae sint	
Plpf.	amāvissē	amāvissēmus		amāta essem	amātae essēmus	
	amāvissēs	amāvissētis		amāta essēs	amātae essētis	
	amāvisset	amāvissent		amāta esset	amātae essent	
<b>Imperative</b>						
	amā	amāte	<i>love!</i>			
<b>Participle</b>						
Pres.	amāns ( <i>gen. amantis</i> )		<i>loving</i>			
Perf.				amātus, -a, -um		<i>having been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to love</i>	amandus, -a, -um		<i>going to be loved</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>						
Pres.	amāre		<i>to love</i>	amārī		<i>to be love</i>
Perf.	amāvisse		<i>to have loved</i>	amātum esse		<i>to have been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrum esse		<i>to be going to love</i>			

<b>teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold</b>						
	active		translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>						
Pres.	teneō	tenēmus	<i>I hold</i>	teneor	tenēmur	<i>I am (being) held</i>
	tenēs	tenētis		tenēris	tenēminī	
	tenet	tenent		tenētur	tenentur	
Impf.	tenēbam	tenēbāmus	<i>I was holding</i>	tenēbar	tenēbāmur	<i>I was (being) held</i>
	tenēbās	tenēbātis		tenēbāris	tenēbāminī	
	tenēbat	tenēbant		tenēbātur	tenēbantur	
Fut.	tenēbō	tenēbimus	<i>I will hold</i>	tenēbor	tenēbimur	<i>I will be held</i>
	tenēbis	tenēbitis		tenēberis	tenēbiminī	
	tenēbit	tenēbunt		tenēbitur	tenēbuntur	
Perf.	tenuī	tenuimus	<i>I have held</i>	tenta sum	tentae sumus	<i>I have been held</i>
	tenuisī	tenuistis		tenta es	tentae estis	<i>was held</i>
	tenuit	tenuērunt		tenta est	tentae sunt	
Plpf.	tenueram	tenuerāmus	<i>I had held</i>	tenta eram	tentae erāmus	<i>I had been held</i>
	tenuerās	tenuerātis		tenta erās	tentae erātis	
	tenuerat	tenuerant		tenta erat	tentae erant	
Fut. Pf.	tenuerō	tenuerimus	<i>I will have held</i>	tenta erō	tentae erimus	<i>I will have been held</i>
	tenueris	tenueritis		tenta eris	tentae eritis	
	tenuerit	tenuerint		tenta erit	tentae erunt	
<b>Subjunctive</b>						
Pres.	teneam	teneāmus	same as	tenear	teneāmur	same as indicative
	teneās	teneātis		teneāris	teneāminī	
	teneat	teneant		teneatur	teneantur	
Impf.	tenērem	tenērēmus		tenērer	tenērēmur	
	tenērēs	tenērētis		tenērēris	tenērēminī	
	tenēret	tenērent		tenērētur	tenērentur	
Perf.	tenuerim	tenuerīmus		tenta sim	tentae sīmus	
	tenueris	tenueritis		tenta sis	tentae sītis	
	tenuerit	tenuerint		tenta sit	tentae sint	
Plpf.	tenuissem	tenuissēmus		tenta essem	tentae essēmus	
	tenuissēs	tenuissētis		tenta essēs	tentae essētis	
	tenuisset	tenuissent		tenta esset	tentae essent	
<b>Imperative</b>						
	tenē	tenēte	<i>hold!</i>			
<b>Participle</b>						
Pres.	tenēns ( <i>gen. tenentis</i> )		<i>holding</i>			
Perf.				tentus, -a, -um		<i>having been held</i>
Fut.	tentūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to hold</i>	tenendus, -a, -um		<i>going to be held</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>						
Pres.	tenēre		<i>to hold</i>	tenērī		<i>to be held</i>
Perf.	tenuisse		<i>to have held</i>	tentum esse		<i>to have been held</i>
Fut.	tentūrum esse		<i>to be going to hold</i>			

<b>dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead</b>					
	active	translation	passive	translation	
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	dūcō dūcimur dūcis dūcitis dūcit dūcunt	<i>I lead</i>	dūcor dūcimur dūceris dūcimini dūcitur dūcuntur	<i>I am (being) led</i>	
Impf.	dūcēbam dūcēbāmus dūcēbās dūcēbātis dūcēbat dūcēbant	<i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbar dūcēbāmur dūcēbāris dūcēbāmini dūcēbātur dūcēbantur	<i>I was (being) led</i>	
Fut.	dūcam dūcēmus dūcēs dūcētis dūcet dūcent	<i>I will lead</i>	dūcar dūcēmur dūceris dūcēmini dūcetur dūcentur	<i>I will be led</i>	
Perf.	dūxī dūximus dūxistī dūxistis dūxit dūxerunt	<i>I have led</i>	ducta sum ductae sumus ducta es ductae estis ducta est ductae sunt	<i>I have been led</i>	
Plpf.	dūxeram dūxerāmus dūxerās dūxerātis dūxerat dūxerant	<i>I had led</i>	ducta eram ductae erāmus ducta erās ductae erātis ducta erat ductae erant	<i>I had been led</i>	
Fut. Pf.	dūxerō dūxerimus dūxeris dūxeritis dūxerit dūxerint	<i>I will have led</i>	ducta erō ductae erimus ducta eris ductae eritis ducta erit ductae erunt	<i>I will have been led</i>	
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	dūcam dūcāmus dūcās dūcātis dūcat dūcant	same as indicative	dūcar dūcāmur dūceris dūcāmini dūcatur dūcantur	same as indicative	
Impf.	dūcerem dūcerēmus dūcerēs dūcerētis dūceret dūcerent		dūcerer dūcerēmur dūcerēris dūcerēmini dūceretur dūcerentur		
Perf.	dūxerim dūxerīmus dūxeris dūxerītis dūxerit dūxerint		ducta sim ductae sīmus ducta sis ductae sītis ducta sit ductae sint		
Plpf.	dūxissem dūxissēmus dūxissēs dūxissētis dūxisset dūxissent		ducta essem ductae essēmus ducta essēs ductae essētis ducta esset ductae essent		
<b>Imperative</b>					
	dūc(e) dūcite	<i>lead!</i>			
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	dūcēns (gen. dūcentis)	<i>leading</i>			
Perf.			ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>	
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to lead</i>	dūcendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>	
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	dūcere	<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be led</i>	
Perf.	dūxisse	<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>	
Fut.	ductūrum esse	<i>to be going to lead</i>			

<b>capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take, seize</b>					
	active	translation	passive	translation	
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	capiō capimus capis capitis capit capiunt	<i>I take</i>	capior capimur caperis capimini capitur capiuntur	<i>I am (being) taken</i>	
Impf.	capiēbam capēbāmus capiēbās capēbātis capiēbat capiēbant	<i>I was taking</i>	capiēbar capiēbāmur capiēbāris capiēbāmini capiēbātur capiēbantur	<i>I was (being) taken</i>	
Fut.	capiam capiēmus capiēs capiētis capiet capient	<i>I will take</i>	capiar capiēmur capiēris capiēmini capietur capientur	<i>I will be taken</i>	
Perf.	cēpī cēpimus cēpistī cēpistis cēpit cēperunt	<i>I have taken</i>	capta sum captae sumus capta es captae estis capta est captae sunt	<i>I have been taken was taken</i>	
Plpf.	cēperam cēperāmus cēperās cēperātis cēperat cēperant	<i>I had taken</i>	capta eram captae erāmus capta erās captae erātis capta erat captae erant	<i>I had been taken</i>	
Fut. Pf.	cēperō cēperimus cēperis cēperitis cēperit cēperint	<i>I will have taken</i>	capta erō captae erimus capta eris captae eritis capta erit captae erunt	<i>I will have been taken</i>	
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	capiam capiāmus capiās capiātis capiat capiant	same as	capiar capiāmur capiāris capiāmini capiatur capiantur	same as indicative	
Impf.	caperem caperēmus caperēs caperētis caperet caperent		caperer caperēmur caperēris caperēmini caperetur caperentur		
Perf.	cēperim cēperīmus cēperis cēperītis cēperit cēperint		capta sim captae sīmus capta sis captae sītis capta sit captae sint		
Plpf.	cēpisssem cēpissēmus cēpissēs cēpissētis cēpisset cēpissent		capta essem captae essēmus capta essēs captae essētis capta esset captae essent		
<b>Imperative</b>					
	cape capite	<i>take!</i>			
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	capiēns (gen. capientis)	<i>taking</i>			
Perf.			captus, -a, -um	<i>having been taken</i>	
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to take</i>	capendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be taken</i>	
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	capere	<i>to take</i>	capī	<i>to be taken</i>	
Perf.	cēpisse	<i>to have taken</i>	captum esse	<i>to have been taken</i>	
Fut.	captūrum esse	<i>to be going to take</i>			

<b>sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum: to know</b>					
	active	translation	passive	translation	
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	sciō scīs scit	scīmus scītis sciunt	<i>I know</i>	scior scīris scītur	scīmur scīminī sciuntur <i>I am (being) known</i>
Impf.	sciēbam sciēbās sciēbat	sciēbāmus sciēbātis sciēbant	<i>I was knowing</i>	sciēbar sciēbāris sciēbātur	sciēbāmur sciēbāminī sciēbantur <i>I was (being) known</i>
Fut.	sciam sciēs sciet	sciēmus sciētis scient	<i>I will know</i>	sciar sciēris sciētur	sciēmur sciēminī scientur <i>I will be known</i>
Perf.	scīvī scīvistī scīvit	scīvimus scīvistis scīverunt	<i>I have known</i>	scīta sum scīta es scīta est	scītae sumus scītae estis scītae sunt <i>I have been known</i>
Plpf.	scīveram scīverās scīverat	scīverāmus scīverātis scīverant	<i>I had known</i>	scīta eram scīta erās scīta erat	scītae erāmus scītae erātis scītae erant <i>I had been known</i>
Fut. Pf.	scīverō scīveris scīverit	scīverimus scīveritis scīverint	<i>I will have known</i>	scīta erō scīta eris scīta erit	scītae erimus scītae eritis scītae erunt <i>I will have been known</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	sciam sciās sciat	sciāmus sciātis sciant	same as indicative	sciar sciāris sciātur	sciāmur sciāminī sciantur same as indicative
Impf.	scīrem scīrēs scīret	scīrēmus scīrētis scīrent		scīrer scīrēris scīrētur	scīrēmur scīrēminī scīrentur
Perf.	scīverim scīverīs scīverit	scīverīmus scīverītis scīverint		scīta sim scīta sis scīta sit	scītae sīmus scītae sītis scītae sint
Plpf.	scīvissem scīvisseēs scīvisset	scīvisseēmus scīvisseētis scīvisissent		scīta essem scīta esseēs scīta esset	scītae esseēmus scītae esseētis scītae essent
<b>Imperative</b>					
	scī	scīte	<i>know!</i>		
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	sciēns (gen. scientis)		<i>knowing</i>		
Perf.				scītus, -a, -um	<i>having been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to know</i>	sciendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be known</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	scīre		<i>to know</i>	scīrī	<i>to be known</i>
Perf.	scīvisse		<i>to have known</i>	scītum esse	<i>to have been known</i>
Fut.	scītūrum esse		<i>to be going to know</i>		

<b>Sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be</b>			<b>possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can</b>		
		translation			translation
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	sum es est	sumus estis sunt	<i>I am</i>	possum potes potest	possumus potestis possunt <i>I am able, can</i>
Impf.	eram erās erat	erāmus erātis erant	<i>I was</i>	poteram poterās poterat	poterāmus poterātis poterant <i>I was able, could</i>
Fut.	erō eris erit	erimus eritis erunt	<i>I will be</i>	poterō poteris poterit	poterimus poteritis poterunt <i>I will be able</i>
Perf.	fuī fuistī fuit	fuiimus fuistis fuerunt	<i>I have been, I was</i>	potuī potuistī potuit	potuimus potuistis potuerunt <i>I have been able, I was able, could</i>
Plpf.	fueram fuerās fuerat	fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant	<i>I had been</i>	potueram potuerās potuerat	potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant <i>I had been able</i>
Fut. Pf.	fuerō fueris fuerit	fuerimus fueritis fuerint	<i>I will have been</i>	potuerō potueris potuerit	potuerimus potueritis potuerint <i>I will have been able</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	sim sis sit	sīmus sītis sint	same as indicative	possim possis possit	possīmus possītis possint same as indicative
Impf.	essem essēs esset	esseēmus esseētis esseent		possem possēs posset	possēmus possētis possent
Perf.	fuerim fuerīs fuerit	fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint		potuerim potuerīs potuerit	potuerīmus potuerītis potuerint
Plpf.	fuissem fuissēs fuisset	fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent		potuissem potuissēs potuisset	potuissēmus potuissētis potuissent
<b>Imperative</b>					
				xxx	xxx
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	esse		<i>to be</i>	posse	<i>to be able</i>
Perf.	fuisse		<i>to have been</i>	potuisse	<i>to have been heard</i>
Fut.	futūrum esse*		<i>to be going to be</i>	----	
* alternative = fore					
<b>sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be, 165</b>					
<b>adsum, -esse, -fuī:</b> be present, assist, 3			<b>possum, posse, potuī:</b> be able, can, avail, 40		
<b>dēsum, -esse, -fuī:</b> be lacking, lack, fail, 6			<b>praesum, -esse, -fuī:</b> be over, preside over, 2		
<b>intersum, -esse, -fuī:</b> take part in, engage in, 1			<b>subsum, -esse, -fuī:</b> be near, close at hand, 1		

	<b>eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go</b>	
	active	translation
<b>Indicative</b>		
Pres.	eō    īmus īs    ītis it    eunt	<i>I go</i>
Impf.	ībam    ībāmus ībās    ībātis ībat    ībant	<i>I was going</i>
Fut.	ībō    ībimus ībīs    ībitis ībit    ībunt	<i>I will go</i>
Perf.	īī    iimus īstī    īstis iit    ierunt	<i>I went, have gone</i>
Plpf.	ieram    ierāmus ierās    ierātis ierat    ierant	<i>I had gone</i>
Fut. Pf.	ierō    ierimus ieris    ieritis ierit    ierint	<i>I will have gone</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>		
Pres.	eam    eāmus eās    eātis eat    eant	same as indicative
Impf.	īrem    īrēmus irēs    irētis īret    irerent	
Perf.	ierim    ierimus ieris    ieritis ierit    ierunt	
Plpf.	īsem    īssēmus īssēs    īssētis īssēt    īssent	
<b>Imperative</b>	ī    īte	
<b>Participle</b>		
Pres.	iēns (euntis)	<i>going</i>
Perf.	---	
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to go</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>		
Pres.	īre	<i>to go</i>
Perf.	īsse	<i>to have gone</i>
Fut.	ītūrum esse	<i>to be going to go</i>

**Compound verbs**

adeō, -īre, i(v)ī, itus: approach, encounter, 2  
eō, īre, īvi, itum: to go, come, 4  
exeō, -īre, -īi (īvi), -itus: go out, 4  
ineō, -īre, īi, -itum: go into, enter, 1  
intereō, -īre, -īvi, -itum: to die, perish, 3  
introeō, -īre, īi, -itum: go into, enter, 1  
obeō, -īre, -īvi, -itum: go to meet, oppose 1  
prōdeō, -īre, -īi, -itum: advance, go forth, 1  
redeō, -īre, -īvi: go back, return, 1  
subeō, -īre, -īi, -itum: go up to, approach, 1  
trānseō, -īre, -īi (īvi), itus: go across, pass, 6

	<b>volō, velle, voluī: to wish, want</b>			
	active	translation		
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	<u>volō</u> <u>vīs</u> <u>vult</u>	<u>volumus</u> <u>vultis</u> <sup>1</sup> <u>volunt</u> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I wish</i>	← irregular present tense <sup>1</sup> pg. 14, 46 <sup>2</sup> pg. 28
Impf.	volēbam volēbās volēbat	volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	<i>I was wishing</i>	
Fut.	volam volēs volet	volēmus volētis volent	<i>I will wish</i>	
Perf.	voluī voluistī voluit	voluimus voluistis voluerunt	<i>I have wished</i>	
Plpf.	volueram voluerās voluerat	voluerāmus voluerātis voluerant	<i>I had wished</i>	
Fut. Pf.	voluerō volueris voluerit	voluerimus volueritis voluerint	<i>I will have wished</i>	
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	<u>velim</u> <u>velis</u> <u>velit</u> <sup>3</sup>	<u>velimus</u> <u>velitis</u> <u>velint</u> <sup>4</sup>	same as indicative	← irregular present tense (not volam) <sup>3</sup> pg. 52 <sup>4</sup> pg. 28, 42, 58, 60
Impf.	<u>vellem</u> <u>vellēs</u> <u>vellet</u>	<u>vellēmus</u> <u>vellētis</u> <u>vellent</u> <sup>5</sup>		← irregular imperfect tense (irreg. velle) <sup>5</sup> pg. 10, 40, 52, 58, 62
Perf.	voluerim voluerīs voluerit	voluerīmus voluerītis voluerint		
Plpf.	voluissem voluissēs voluisset	voluissēmus voluissētis voluissent		
<b>Imperative</b>	xxxx	xxxx	<i>wish!</i>	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	volēns (gen. volentis)		<i>wishing</i>	
Perf.	xxxx			
Fut.	xxxx			
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	velle		<i>to wish</i>	← irregular infinitive
Perf.	voluisse		<i>to have wished</i>	
Fut.	xxxx			



<b>sequō, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow</b>		
	deponent	translation
<b>Indicative</b>		
Pres.	sequor sequeris sequitur	sequimur sequimini sequuntur
Impf.	sequēbar sequēbāris sequēbātur	sequēbāmur sequēbāmini sequēbantur
Fut.	sequar sequēris sequētur	sequēmur sequēmini sequentur
Perf.	secūta sum secūta es secūta est	secūtae sumus secūtae estis secūtae sunt
Plpf.	secūta eram secūta erās secūta erat	secūtae erāmus secūtae erātis secūtae erant
Fut. Pf.	secūta erō secūta eris secūta erit	secūtae erimus secūtae eritis secūtae erunt
<b>Subjunctive</b>		
Pres.	sequar sequāris sequātur	sequāmur sequāmini sequantur
Impf.	sequerer sequerēris sequerētur	sequerēmur sequerēmini sequerentur
Perf.	secūta sim secūta sis secūta sit	secūtae simus secūtae sitis secūtae sint
Plpf.	secūta essem secūta essēs secūta esset	secūtae essēmus secūtae essētis secūtae essent
<b>Imperative</b>		
	sequere	sequitor
		<i>follow!</i>
<b>Participle</b>		
Pres.	sequēns (gen. sequentis)	<i>following</i>
Perf.	secūtus, -a, -um	<i>having followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to follow</i>
		sequendus, -a -um <i>going to be followed</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>		
Pres.	sequī	<i>to follow</i>
Perf.	secūtum esse	<i>to have followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrum esse	<i>to be going to follow</i>

**1. Relative Clause of Purpose**

There are two different types of purpose (final) clauses: adverbial and relative. Adverbial purpose clauses are introduced by *ut/nē* and are regularly translated with the modal verbs *may* and *might*. Relative clauses of purpose behave in the same way as adverbial purpose clauses—employing present subjunctive in primary sequence and imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence—but they are introduced by a relative pronoun.

There are only two examples of relative clauses of purpose in this commentary. When you translate these clauses, use the modal verbs *may/might* or *would/should* depending on the context:

legātōs...mittunt quī dicerent... *they sent envoys who would/should say...* p. 11  
= *so that they might say...*

nāvēs...quibus reportārī possent *ships by which they might be able to be carried back* p. 19  
= *so that they might be able to be carried back*

**2. Relative Clause of Characteristic (Generic Relative Clause)**

The function of a relative clause of characteristic is to clarify *what sort of person* or *what sort of thing* the antecedent is. This clause governs a subjunctive verb and very often modifies a general or indefinite antecedent (e.g. he is a man who flees from danger). The indicative mood, by contrast, suggests that the antecedent is a particular someone doing something (e.g. he is the man who fled from danger).

e.g. Is est quī ā periculō fugat. *He is (the sort of) one who flees from danger.*  
or *He is (the sort of) one who would flee from danger.*

This type of relative clause can be causal, concessive, or consecutive (result) in sense depending on the context. While you should translate pf. and plpf. subjunctives as you would an indicative, you may translate pres. and impf. subjunctives two different ways: (a) as an indicative or (b) as a potential subjunctive with the modal verb *would* (see above). Caesar frequently uses this clause when the antecedent is (a) missing, as in the example above, (b) a generic noun, or (c) an indefinite pronoun (e.g. *is, ea, id*).

ea quae...pertinērent *those (sort of) things which pertained/would pertain to setting out* p. 4

regnum...quod pater ante habuerit *(the sort of) kingdom which his father held before* p. 6

id quod fēcerit *that (sort of thing) which he did* p. 40

neque is sum quī...terrear *I am not (such a) one who am terrified/would be terrified* p. 46

**3. Relative Clause in Indirect Discourse**

In indirect discourse, the verbs of subordinate clauses—including including relative clauses—become subjunctive. Caesar frequently uses quod-clauses and conditional clauses (si-clauses) in this way, but his use of relative clauses in indirect discourse is surprisingly rare:

quod imperium obtinētūrus esset *because he was about to obtain the command* p. 6

quod...pendere cōsuēsset *which he had been accustomed to pay* p. 40

quōrum alter milia...absit *one of whom is about fifty miles away* p. 42

In most instances, these subjunctives do not require a special translation and therefore should be translated in the tense in which you find them. If the relative clause was originally a relative clause of purpose or a relative clause of characteristic, however, you should translate it accordingly.

Conditional sentences in indirect discourse undergo a number of changes that make them more difficult to identify and translate than their counterparts in direct discourse.

### I. Identifying conditions in direct discourse:

If-then clauses are called **conditions** or **conditional sentences**. All conditions have two parts: (a) the **protasis** (premise, if-clause, or conditional) and (b) the **apodosis** (result, then-clause, or consequent). In order to identify one of the six main types of conditions below, you must identify the tense and mood of the verbs in both the *protasis* and *apodosis*. If the tense and moods of the verbs do no fit one of the six types, we call such a sentence a **mixed condition**.

name	protasis	apodosis	example in translation
simple present	pres.	pres.	If you believe, you are mistaken.
simple past	past	past	If you believed, you were mistaken.
future more vivid	fut./fut. pf.	fut.	If you believe, you will be mistaken.
future less vivid	pres. subj.	pres. subj.	If you should believe, you would be mistaken.
present contrafactual	impf. subj.	impf. subj.	If you were believing, you would be mistaken.
past contrafactual	plpf. subj.	plpf. subj.	If you had believed, you would have been mistaken.

### II. Identifying conditions in indirect discourse

In indirect discourse, every apodosis becomes an infinitive and every protasis—whether originally indicative or subjunctive—becomes subjunctive. In secondary sequence, the infinitive remains the same, but the protasis undergoes more changes (often becoming impf. subj.), which makes the condition difficult to identify. Below is a summary of those changes.

Indicative Conditions		
	direct discourse	indirect discourse
<b>Simple Present: <i>If you believe, you are wrong.</i></b>		
primary	dīcō "sī credis, errās."	dīcō sī haec credās, tē errāre
secondary	dixī "sī credis, errās."	dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errāre
<b>Simple Past: <i>If you believed, you were wrong.</i></b>		
primary	dīcō "sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī."	dīcō sī haec crederēs/credideris, tē errāvisse.
secondary	dixī "sī credēbās/credidistī, errāvistī."	dixī sī haec crederēs/credidissēs, tē errāvisse.
<b>Future More Vivid: <i>If you believe, you will be wrong.</i></b>		
primary	dīcō "sī credēs, errābis."	dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse
secondary	dixī "sī credēs, errābis."	dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse

Subjunctive Conditions		
	direct discourse	indirect discourse
<b>Future Less Vivid: <i>If you should believe, you would be wrong.</i></b>		
primary	dīcō "sī credās, errēs."	dīcō sī haec credās, tē errātūrum esse
secondary	dixī "sī credās, errēs."	dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse
<b>Present Contrafactual: <i>If you were believing, you would be wrong.</i></b>		
primary	dīcō "sī crederēs, errārēs."	dīcō sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse
secondary	dixī "sī crederēs, errārēs."	dixī sī haec crederēs, tē errātūrum esse
<b>Past Contrafactual: <i>If you had believed, you would have been wrong.</i></b>		
primary	dīcō "sī credissēs, errāvissēs."	dīcō sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.
secondary	dixī "sī credissēs, errāvissēs."	dixī sī haec credissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.

## Caesar Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (5 or more times)

The following seven pages includes all words in the Caesar selections that occur five or more times arranged in an alphabetized vocabulary list. The author tabulated the frequency lists by collating all of Caesars' words in the selections and counting them. Digital flashcards are available online.

**ā, ab:** (away) from, by, 80

**absum, -esse, afui:** be absent, lack, 6

**ac:** and, and also, and even, 24

**accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus:** approach, 5

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall to, 13

**accipiō:** to take without effort, receive, get, accept, 10

**ad:** to, toward; near, at 110

**Aduātucī, -ōrum m.:** Aduatuci (in Belgae), 5

**adventus, -ūs m.:** arrival, approach, 7

**ager, agrī m.:** field, land; farm, 8

**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 8

**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 13

**alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), 12

**altus, -a, -um:** high, lofty, tall, 5

**Ambiorix, -rigis m.:** Ambiorix, 15

**amicitia, -ae, f.:** friendship, 12

**animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum:** turn mind to, notice 5

**animus, -ī m.:** mind, spirit; pl. courage, 6

**annus, -ī m.:** year, 11

**appellō (1):** call, call by name, 5

**apud:** among, at the house of (acc.), 7

**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum:** to judge, think, 10

**arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 7

**ascendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** ascend, mount 2

**at:** but; mind you; but, you say, 7

**atque:** and, and also, and even, 60

**aut:** or (aut...aut – either...or), 32

**autem:** however, moreover, 5

**barbarus, -a, -um:** foreign, savage, 5

**Belgae, -ārum m.:** Belgians, 6

**bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 16

**Britannia, -ae f.:** Britain, 6

**Caesar, -aris m.:** Caesar, 40

**calamitās, -tātis f.:** loss, misfortune, calamity, disaster, 5

**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 11

**castra, -ōrum n.:** camp, encampment, 23

**casus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, mishap; fall 5

**causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 21

**celeritās, -tātis f.:** quickness, swiftness, speed, 5

**celeriter:** quickly, swiftly, speedily, 6

**certus, -a, -um:** definite, sure, certain, reliable, 8

**Cicero, Cicerōnis m.:** Cicero 14

**circiter:** (round) about, not far from, 7  
**circumveniō, -ire:** to come around, encircle, 6  
**cīvitās cīvitātis, f.:** state, citizenship, 20  
**coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** to begin, 9  
**cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum:** to learn, come to know, pf. know, 14  
**cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactum:** to collect; compel, 11  
**cohors, cohortis f.:** cohort, company, troop 14  
**communis, -e:** common, 6  
**compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** fill up, fill, 6  
**complures n.:** several, 5  
**concilium, -iī n.:** meeting, rendezvous, 6  
**confirmō (1):** make strong, confirm strengthen, 5  
**co(n)iciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 10  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, 6  
**cōnsilium, -iī n.:** plan, counsel, 12  
**conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus:** see, behold, 5  
**constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus:** decide, establish, resolve, 14  
**cōnsuescō, -ere, cōnsuē(v)ī, -suētum:** to be accustomed, 8  
**consuetudo, -inis f.:** custom, habit, 5  
**contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum:** hold or keep together, 6  
**contrōversia, -ae f.:** dispute, debate, 7  
**conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus:** come together, assemble, 9  
**copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 12  
**Cotta, -ae m.:** Cotta, 10  
**Crassus, -ī m.:** Crassus, 5  
**cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 86  
**dē:** (down) from; about, concerning, 41  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** report, offer 8  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 5  
**dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum:** be lacking, lack, fail, 6  
**dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:** say, speak, tell, call, name, 18  
**diēs, -ēī m./f.:** day, time, season, 33  
**discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** to go away, depart, 9  
**disciplīna, -ae f.:** training, instruction, 5  
**dō, dare, dedī, datum:** give; grant, 18  
**Druidēs, -um m.:** Druids, 6  
**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus:** lead, draw; consider, 7  
**dum:** while, as long as, until, 6  
**duo, duae, duo:** two, 8  
**ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 72  
**Eburōnēs, -um m.:** Eburones (German), 5  
**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:** make, form, 5  
**ēgredior, -ī, -gressus:** go out, disembark, 5  
**eques, equitīs m.:** horseman, rider, 12  
**equitātus, -ūs m.:** cavalry, 5  
**et:** and, also, even, 167  
**etiam:** also, even, besides, 8

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 5  
**exercitus, -ūs m.:** (trained) army, 9  
**existimō (1):** judge, consider, think, 9  
**facilis, -e:** easy; adv. facile, easily, 10  
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum:** do, make, perform; grant, 40  
**facultās, -tātis f.:** opportunity, power, skill, ability, 5  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 7  
**filius, -iī m.:** son, 5  
**finis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 17  
**finitimus, -a, -um:** neighboring; subst. neighbors, 6  
**flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 9  
**fortis, -e:** strong, brave, valiant, 7  
**frumentum, -i n.:** grain, 10  
**Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 17  
**Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; subst. a Gaul, 15  
**genus, generis, n.:** origin, kind, sort, 10  
**Germānus, -a, -um:** German, 9  
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** carry (on), wage, 8  
**gravis, -e:** heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 9  
**habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus:** have, hold; consider, 32  
**Helvētius, -a, -um:** Helvetian; subst. a Helvetian 16  
**hiberna, -ōrum n.:** winter-quarters, 26  
**hic, haec, hoc:** this, these, 92  
**homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 15  
**hostis, -is m./f.:** stranger, enemy, foe, 43  
**ibi:** there, in that place, 5  
**īdem, eadem, idem:** the same, 14  
**ille, illa, illud:** that, those, 22  
**impedimentum, -i n.:** baggage, impediment, 6  
**imperium, -i n.:** command, power, 7  
**imperō (1):** command, order, bid, 7  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, assault, onset, 7  
**in:** in, on (abl.), into, to (acc.) 173  
**incitō (1):** put into motion, urge on, 5  
**inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum:** wage, carry on, 7  
**initium, -iī n.:** beginning, entrance, 6  
**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 15  
**interim:** meanwhile, in the meantime, 5  
**interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** kill, slay, destroy, 14  
**intermittō, -ere:** interrupt, discontinue, leave off, 5  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 17  
**is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 133  
**ita:** so, thus, 7  
**itaque:** and so, 6  
**īter, itineris n.:** way, road, route, journey, 17  
**iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum:** to order, command, 17

**Labiēnus, ī m.:** Labienus, 5  
**lēgātus, -ī m.:** an envoy, legate, 16  
**legio, -ōnis f.:** legion, (~4200 soldiers), 32  
**licet:** impersonal, it is allowed or permitted, 5  
**littera, -ae f.:** letter of the alphabet, letter, literature, 12  
**locus, -ī m.:** place, region, location, 31  
**longē:** far, at a distant, 6  
**longus -a, -um:** long, 8  
**Lucius, -ī m.:** Lucius, 10  
**magnitūdo, -inis f.:** greatness, size, 5  
**magnus, -a, -um:** great, large; mighty, important, 29  
**maior, maius:** greater, 6  
**manus, manūs, f.:** hand; group, 9  
**maximē:** exceedingly, especially, 6  
**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, largest, 15  
**mīles, mīlitis, m.:** soldier, 33  
**mille pl. milia, ium n.:** thousand, 9  
**minor, minus:** less, smaller, 7  
**mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus:** send, hurl, dismiss, 20  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9  
**multitūdo, inis f.:** multitude, population, people, 11  
**multus, -a, -um:** much, many, 11  
**mūnitio, -iōnis f.:** fortification, paving, 7  
**nam:** for, 9  
**nāvis, nāvis, f.:** ship, boat, 23  
**nē:** lest, that not, no, not, 13  
**neque:** and not, nor (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27  
**Nervii, -iōrum m.:** Nervii (Belgic Gauls) 9  
**nihil:** nothing, 10  
**nisi:** if not, unless 6  
**nōn:** not, by no means, not at all, 36  
**noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 36  
**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 9  
**nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, no one, 9  
**numerus, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 13  
**nuntius, -iī m.:** messenger, 6  
**ob:** on account of, because of (acc.), 5  
**obsēs, obsidis m./f.:** hostage, 5  
**obtineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 6  
**omnis, omne:** every, all, 72  
**oppugnatio, -tiōnis f.:** an assault, 6  
**oppugnō (1):** capture by assault, attack, 6  
**ōratio, -ionis f.:** speaking, speech, language, 8  
**ordō, -inis m.:** order, line, array; status, 6  
**Orgetorix, -is m.:** Orgetorix, 6  
**pars, partis, f.:** part, side, direction, 43

**passus, -ūs:** pace, step, 7  
**paulus, -a, -um:** little, small, 9  
**pāx, pācis f.:** peace, quiet, rest, 6  
**per:** through, across (acc) 18  
**perīculum, -ī n.:** risk, danger, peril, 14  
**permoveō, -ēre:** to move deeply, trouble, excite, agitate, 5  
**persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum:** persuade, convince, 12  
**pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī:** to pertain to, reach, stretch to, 7  
**perturbō (1):** confuse, disturb, throw into confusion, 6  
**pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum:** arrive, 8  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 5  
**petō, petere, petivī, petitum:** seek, aim at, 7  
**plērumque:** for the most part, mostly, commonly, 5  
**ponō, ponere, posuī, positum:** to put, place, 6  
**populus, -ī m.:** people, nation, 9  
**possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 40  
**post:** after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 5  
**praemium, -ī n.:** reward, prize, 5  
**praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus:** perform, show, be better, 6  
**premō, -ere, pressī, pressus:** check, pursue, control, 7  
**primus -a -um:** first, 15  
**privō (1):** deprive of, rob, strip from (abl), 5  
**prō:** before, for, in behalf of (abl.), 16  
**probō (1):** approve, commend, 5  
**proelium, -iī n.:** battle, combat, 15  
**profectio, -ōnis f.:** departure, 5  
**proficiscor, -ī, -fectus:** set out, depart, 23  
**prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus:** keep off, prohibit, 6  
**propter:** on account of, because of, 5  
**prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 7  
**proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, very close, 12  
**pūblicus, -a, -um:** public, common, 11  
**pugna, -ae f.:** battle, fight, 7  
**pugnō (1):** to fight, 9  
**Pullo, Pullōnis, m.:** Pullo, 6  
**quantus, -a, -um:** how great, much, many, 6  
**-que:** and, 109  
**quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?):** who, which, that, 226  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, certainly, 6  
**Quintus, -ī m.:** Quintus, 6  
**quisque, quidque:** each one, each person, 9  
**ratio, ratiōnis, f.:** calculation, account, method, 5  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum:** take back, recover, 10  
**regnum, -ī n.:** royal power, kingdom, realm, 8  
**relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum:** to leave behind, 7  
**reliquus, -a, um:** remaining, the rest of, 28

**rēs, rei, f.:** thing, matter, affair, business, 64  
**resistō, -ere, -stīfī:** stand still, halt; oppose, 5  
**Rhēnus, -ī m.:** Rhine River, 9  
**Rhodanus, -a, -um:** Rhone, 5  
**Rōmānus, -a, -um:** of Rome, Roman, 15  
**Sabinus, ī m.:** Sabinus, 7  
**salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, refuge; health, 10  
**sē:** himself, herself, itself, themselves, 74  
**sed: but, moreover,** however, 13  
**Sēquanus, -a, -um:** Sequanian, 5  
**sēsē:** emphatic form of reflexive sē, 14  
**sī:** if (only), whether, in case that, 30  
**signum -ī, n.:** sign, signal; gesture, seal, 5  
**sine:** without (abl.), 8  
**singulus, -a, -um:** one by one, separate, 5  
**spērō (1):** hope (for), expect, 6  
**spēs, -ē f.:** hope, expectation, 6  
**sub:** under, below, beneath, underneath, 5  
**subitō:** suddenly, 5  
**subsequor, -ī, secūtus sum:** to follow after or behind, 7  
**subsidiū, ī n.:** reserve troops; third line of battle, 5  
**sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be, 165  
**summus, -a, -um:** top of, highest (part of) 10  
**superō (1):** surpass, overcome, 6  
**superus, -a, -um:** upper, higher, above, 9  
**sustineō, -ēre, -uī:** hold up, sustain, 8  
**suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their own, 54  
**tamen:** however, nevertheless, 14  
**tantus, -a, -um:** so great, so large, 10  
**telum, -ī n.:** projective, weapon, blow, 9  
**tempus, temporis, n.:** time, occasion, 11  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep, 6  
**tertius, -a, -um:** third, 8  
**Titurius, -ī m.:** Titurius, 8  
**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 7  
**trānseō, -ire, -iī (ivī), itus:** pass (by), 6  
**trēs, tria:** three, 7  
**tum:** then, at that time, 12  
**turris, turris f.:** tower, walled tower, 7  
**tūtus, -a, -um:** safe, secure, guarded, 7  
**ūllus, -a, -um:** any, 5  
**undique:** (from) everywhere, from or on all sides, 5  
**ūnus, -a, -um:** one, 29  
**ūsus, -ūs m.:** use, practice, application, 10  
**ut:** as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 59  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each (of two) 8  
**ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum:** use, employ (abl.), 5

**vallum, -ī n.:** wall, fortification, palisade, 11  
**veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus:** come, go, 14  
**victoria, -ae f.:** victory, 7  
**videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum:** to see, 14  
**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 11  
**vīta, -ae, f.:** life, 5  
**volō, velle, voluī:** will, wish, be willing, 13  
**Vorēnus, -ī m.:** Vorenius, 5











